



**GIULIA**

OWNER HANDBOOK

[www.puretyre.co.uk](http://www.puretyre.co.uk)

This Owner Handbook illustrates the operating instructions of the car.

Alfa Romeo provides a dedicated section available in electronic format for enthusiasts who want insights, curiosities and detailed information about the features and functions of the car.

#### **ONLINE OWNER HANDBOOK**

The  symbol appears in the Owner Handbook next to topics for which updates are available.

Go to [elum.alfaromeo.com](http://elum.alfaromeo.com) and log onto your reserved area.

The *eLUM* website is free and conveniently allows you to browse the on-board documents of all other models of the Group, among many other things.

Have a nice read and happy motoring!

## Dear Customer,

We would like to congratulate and thank you for choosing an Alfa Romeo.

We have written this handbook to help you get to know all the features of your vehicle and use it in the best possible way. This vehicle is intended for daily use as well as for specific uses. Please take your time to familiarise with all the dynamic features of your car.

Here you will find information, advice and important warnings regarding use of your vehicle and how to achieve the best performance from the technical features of your Alfa Romeo.

You are advised to read it right through before taking to the road for the first time, to become familiar with the controls and above all with those concerning brakes, steering and gearbox; at the same time, you can understand the vehicle behaviour on different road surfaces.

This document also provides a description of special features and tips, as well as essential information for the safe driving, care and maintenance of your Alfa Romeo over time.

After reading it, you are advised to keep the handbook inside the vehicle, for an easy reference and for making sure it remains on board the vehicle should it be sold.

In the attached Warranty Booklet you will also find the description of the Services that Alfa Romeo offers to its customers, the Warranty Certificate and the detail of the terms and conditions for maintaining its validity.

We are sure that these will help you to get in touch with and appreciate your new car and the service provided by the people at Alfa Romeo.

Enjoy reading. Happy motoring!

## IMPORTANT

**This Owner Handbook describes all vehicle versions. Optional contents, equipment meant for specific Markets or particular versions are not identified as such in the text: you need to consider only the information related to the version you own. Any content introduced throughout the production of the model, outside the specific request of options at the time of purchase, will be identified with the wording (*where provided*).**

**All data contained in this publication are intended to help you use your vehicle in the best possible way. Alfa Romeo S.p.A. aims at a constant improvement of the vehicles produced. For this reason it reserves the right to make changes to the model described for technical and/or commercial reasons.**

**For further information, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.**

# READ THIS CAREFULLY

## REFUELLING



Do not use petrol containing methanol or ethanol E85. Using these mixtures may cause misfiring and driving issues, as well as damage vital components of the supply system.

For further details on the use of the correct fuel see the "Refuelling the vehicle" paragraph in the "Starting and driving" chapter.

## STARTING THE ENGINE



Versions with mechanical gearbox

Make sure the electric parking brake is engaged, press the clutch pedal and then press the ignition button briefly.

Versions with automatic transmission

Make sure that the electric parking brake is engaged and that the transmission is in P (Park) or N (Neutral), press the brake pedal and then press the ignition device button.

## PARKING ON FLAMMABLE MATERIAL



The catalytic converter develops high temperatures during operation. Do not park the car on grass, dry leaves, pine needles or other flammable material: fire hazard.

## RESPECTING THE ENVIRONMENT



The vehicle is fitted with a system that carries out a continuous diagnosis of the emission-related components in order to help protect the environment.

## ELECTRICAL ACCESSORIES



If, after buying the vehicle, you decide to add electrical accessories (with the risk of gradually draining the battery), contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership. They can calculate the overall electrical requirement and check that the vehicle's electric system can support the required load.

## SCHEDULED SERVICING



Correct maintenance of the car is essential for ensuring that it maintains its performance and its safety features, its environmental friendliness and low running costs for a long time to come.

# USE OF THE OWNER HANDBOOK

## OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

Each time direction instructions (left/right or forwards/backwards) about the vehicle are given, these must be understood as regarding an occupant in the driver's seat. Special cases not complying with this rule will be specified as appropriate in the text.

The figures in the Owner Handbook are provided by way of example only: this might imply that some details of the image do not correspond to the actual arrangement of your vehicle. In addition, the Handbook has been conceived considering vehicles with steering wheel on the left side; it is therefore possible that on vehicles with steering wheel on the right side, the position or construction of some controls is not exactly mirror-like with respect to the figure.

To identify the chapter with the information needed you can consult the index at the end of this Owner Handbook.

Chapters can be rapidly identified with dedicated graphic tabs, at the side of each odd page. A few pages further there is a key for getting to know the chapter order and the relevant symbols in the tabs. There is in any case a textual indication of the current chapter at the side of each even page.

## WARNINGS AND PRECAUTIONS

While reading this Owner Handbook you will find a series of **WARNINGS** to prevent procedures that could damage your vehicle.

There are also **PRECAUTIONS** that must be carefully followed to prevent incorrect use of the components of the vehicle, which could cause accidents or injuries.

Therefore all **WARNINGS** and **PRECAUTIONS** must always be carefully followed.

**WARNINGS** and **PRECAUTIONS** are recalled in the text with the following symbols:



personal safety;



vehicle safety;



environmental protection.

**NOTE** These symbols, when necessary, are indicated besides the title or at the end of the line and are followed by a number. That number recalls the corresponding warning at the end of the relevant section.

## SYMBOLS

Some car components have coloured labels whose symbols indicate precautions to be observed when using this component. See below for a brief description of each symbol summarising the contents herein. Always take great care to all warnings herein.



READ THE OWNER  
HANDBOOK



DO NOT TOUCH WITH  
HANDS



IT CAN START  
AUTOMATICALLY ALSO  
WITH ENGINE OFF



PROTECT YOUR EYES



DO NOT OPEN THE CAP  
WHEN THE ENGINE IS  
HOT



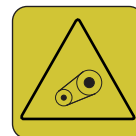
DO NOT OPEN: HIGH  
PRESSURE GAS



KEEP CHILDREN AT A  
DISTANCE



BURSTING



MOVING PARTS KEEP PARTS  
OF YOUR BODY AND  
CLOTHES AWAY



DO NOT APPROACH  
FLAMES



CORROSIVE LIQUID



HIGH VOLTAGE

## VEHICLE CHANGES / ALTERATIONS



**IMPORTANT** Any change or alteration of the vehicle might seriously affect its safety and road holding, thus causing accidents, in which the occupants could even be fatally injured.

**IMPORTANT** The use of these devices inside the passenger compartment (without an external aerial) may cause the electrical systems to malfunction. This could compromise the safety of the vehicle in addition to constituting a potential hazard for passengers' health.

**IMPORTANT** If mobile phones/laptops/smartphones/tablets are inside the vehicle and/or close to the electronic key, reduced performance of the Keyless Start system may occur.

*This page is intentionally left blank*



**KNOWING YOUR CAR**



**KNOWING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL**



**SAFETY**



**STARTING AND DRIVING**



**IN AN EMERGENCY**



**SERVICING AND CARE**



**TECHNICAL DATA**



**MULTIMEDIA**



**INDEX**

ABC



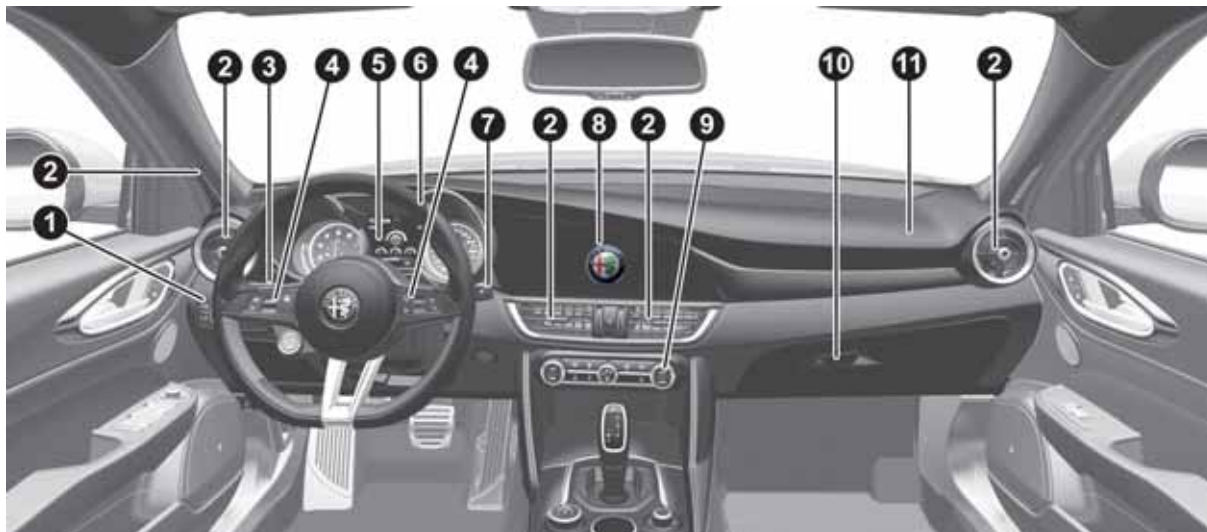


## KNOWING YOUR CAR

|                                    |    |
|------------------------------------|----|
| INSTRUMENT PANEL . . . . .         | 10 |
| RIGHT HAND DRIVE VERSION . . . . . | 11 |
| THE KEYS . . . . .                 | 12 |
| IGNITION DEVICE . . . . .          | 13 |
| ENGINE IMMOBILIZER . . . . .       | 14 |
| ALARM SYSTEM. . . . .              | 15 |
| DOORS. . . . .                     | 16 |
| SEATS . . . . .                    | 19 |
| HEADRESTS . . . . .                | 22 |
| STEERING WHEEL. . . . .            | 23 |
| REAR VIEW MIRRORS . . . . .        | 24 |
| EXTERNAL LIGHTS . . . . .          | 25 |
| INTERIOR LIGHTS . . . . .          | 29 |
| WINDSCREEN WIPER. . . . .          | 29 |
| CLIMATE CONTROL . . . . .          | 31 |
| WINDOW WINDERS . . . . .           | 33 |
| ELECTRIC SUNROOF . . . . .         | 34 |
| BONNET . . . . .                   | 35 |
| TAILGATE . . . . .                 | 36 |
| ROOF RACK/SKI RACK . . . . .       | 37 |

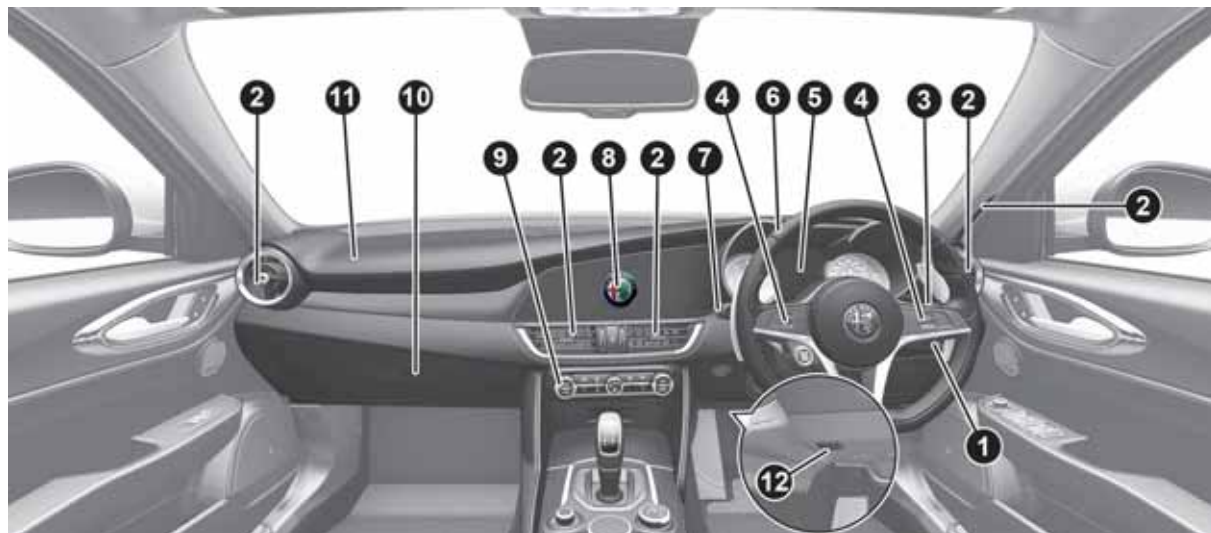
In-depth knowledge of your new vehicle starts here.  
The handbook that you are reading simply and directly explains  
how it is made and how it works.  
That's why we advise you to read it seated comfortably on board,  
so that you can see immediately what is described here for  
yourself.

## INSTRUMENT PANEL



0303650001EM

1. Light switch; 2. Air diffusers; 3. Left stalk; 4. Steering wheel controls; 5. Instrument panel; 6. Steering wheel; 7. Right stalk; 8. Connect; 9. Automatic dual-zone climate control system; 10. Glove compartment; 11. Passenger side air bag; 12. Bonnet release lever.



2

0303650020EM

1. Light switch; 2. Air diffusers; 3. Left stalk; 4. Steering wheel controls; 5. Instrument panel; 6. Steering wheel; 7. Right stalk; 8. Connect; 9. Automatic dual-zone climate control system; 10. Glove compartment; 11. Passenger side air bag; 12. Bonnet release lever.



ABC

## THE KEYS



### ELECTRONIC KEY



1)



1)

The vehicle is equipped with an electronic key with the Keyless Start fig. 3 function, provided in duplicate.



3

0401650010EM

Briefly press the  button: unlocking of doors and boot, timed switching-on of internal lights and single flashing of direction indicators (if activated from Connect system).

The doors can always be unlocked by putting the metal insert inside the driver side door lock.

Briefly press the  button: locking of doors and boot, timed switching-off of internal lights and double flashing of

direction indicators (if activated from Connect system).

Rapidly press the  button twice to open the boot remotely. The direction indicators will flash twice to indicate that the boot has been opened.

### Automatic window opening/closing function

(where provided)

Prolonged pressing of button  : all windows open.

Prolonged pressing of button  : all windows closed.

### REQUEST FOR ADDITIONAL KEYS

If you need a new electronic key, go to an Alfa Romeo Dealership, taking an ID document and the car ownership documents.



### IMPORTANT

**1)** Used batteries may be harmful to the environment if not disposed of correctly. They must be disposed of as specified by law in the special containers or taken to an Alfa Romeo Dealership, which will take care of their disposal.



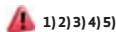
### IMPORTANT

**1)** The electronic components inside the key may be damaged if the key is subjected to strong shocks. In order to ensure complete efficiency of the electronic devices inside the key, it should never be exposed to direct sunlight.

## IGNITION DEVICE



### OPERATION



To activate the ignition device fig. 4 the electronic key must be inside the passenger compartment.



4

0402650001EM

The ignition device has the following possible states:

- ☐ STOP: engine off, steering locked. Some electrical devices (e.g. central door locking system, alarm, etc.) are still available;
- ☐ ON (single button press): all electrical devices are available. This state can be entered by pressing the ignition device button once, without pressing the brake/clutch pedal;
- ☐ AVV: engine starting. This state can be entered by pressing the ignition device

button once and pressing the brake/clutch pedal.

NOTE For versions with automatic transmission, with the ignition device at ON, if 30 minutes pass with the gear lever at P (Park) and the engine stopped, the ignition device will automatically move to the STOP position.

NOTE For versions with manual transmission, with the ignition device at ON, if 30 minutes pass and the engine stopped, the ignition device will automatically move to the STOP position.

NOTE With the engine running, it is possible to go away from the car taking the electronic key with you. The engine will still be running. The vehicle will indicate the absence of the key on board when the door is closed.

For more information on the engine start-up, see the description in the "Starting the engine" paragraph, in the "Starting and driving" chapter.

IMPORTANT If the battery was disconnected, do not start the engine immediately after reconnecting the terminals, but press the start button, without operating the pedals, to turn on the instrument panel and then start the engine.

The  symbol on the instrument panel will remain on, indicating that the steering must be initialised. To do this,

turn the steering wheel from one end to the other and bring it back to the centre position within 30 seconds from starting the engine. If any red warning lights on the instrument panel remain lit, stop the engine, wait for at least 5 seconds and repeat the starting procedure described above.



ABC

## STARTING WITH FLAT KEY BATTERY

If the remote control battery is flat, proceed as follows to start the vehicle:

- ☐ lift the front armrest;
- ☐ lay the key on the shape which is found on the bottom of the compartment.

## STEERING LOCK

(where provided)

### Activation

The steering lock is engaged when the driver door is opened with the ignition device button at STOP.

### Deactivation

The steering lock disengages when the ignition device is pressed and the electronic key is recognised.



### WARNING

**1)** Always take the key with you when you leave your vehicle to prevent someone from accidentally operating the controls. Remember to engage the electric parking brake. Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.

**2)** It is absolutely forbidden to carry out any after-market operation involving steering system or steering column modifications (e.g. installation of anti-theft device) that could adversely affect performance, invalidate the warranty, cause **SERIOUS SAFETY PROBLEMS** and also result in the car not meeting type-approval requirements.

**3)** Before leaving the vehicle, ALWAYS engage the handbrake. On versions equipped with automatic transmission, activate mode P (Park) and press the ignition device to set it to STOP. When leaving the vehicle, always lock all the doors by pressing the button on the handle.

**4)** For versions equipped with the Keyless Start system, do not leave the electronic key inside or near the car or in a place accessible to children. Do not leave the vehicle with the ignition device in ON position. A child could activate the electric window winders, other controls or even start the vehicle.

**5)** If the ignition device has been tampered with (e.g. an attempted theft), have it checked over by the Alfa Romeo Dealership before driving again.

## ENGINE IMMOBILIZER



The Engine Immobilizer system prevents unauthorised use of the vehicle preventing to start the engine.

The system does not need to be enabled/activated: operation is automatic, regardless of the fact that the vehicle's doors are locked or unlocked.

When the ignition device is set to ON, the Engine Immobilizer system identifies the code transmitted by the key. If the code is recognised as valid, the Engine Immobilizer system enables engine starting.

When the ignition device is brought back to STOP, the Engine Immobilizer system deactivates the control unit controlling the engine, thus preventing its starting.

For the correct engine starting procedures, see the instructions in the "Starting the engine" paragraph, "Starting and driving" chapter.



## Irregular operation

If, during starting, the key code is not correctly recognised, the  icon is displayed on the instrument panel (see the instructions in the "Warning lights and messages" paragraph, "Knowing the instrument panel" chapter). This condition leads to the engine switching off after 2 seconds. In this case, bring the ignition device to STOP and then to ON; if it is still blocked, try with the other keys provided. If it is still not possible to start the engine, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

If the  icon is displayed while driving, this means that the system is running a self-diagnosis (e.g. due to a voltage drop). If the display persists, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

## ALARM SYSTEM

(where provided)



Activation of the alarm triggers the acoustic warning and the direction indicators.

**IMPORTANT** The alarm is adapted to meet requirements in various countries.

### SWITCHING ON THE ALARM

With the doors, bonnet and tailgate closed and the ignition device turned to STOP, point the electronic key towards the vehicle and press and release button .

Except on some versions for specific markets, the system produces a visual and acoustic warning and enables door locking.

With the alarm engaged, the warning lights on the panels of the front door handles flash fig. 5.



5

0404650001EM

### TURNING THE ALARM OFF

Press the **6** button.

**IMPORTANT** The alarm does not switch off when the central opening is activated using the metal insert in the key.

### DISABLING THE ALARM

To completely deactivate the alarm (e.g. during a long period of vehicle inactivity), close the doors by turning the metal insert of the key with remote control in the door lock.



ABC

## DOORS



### LOCKING/UNLOCKING DOORS FROM THE INSIDE

#### Central locking/unlocking

If all doors are closed properly, they will automatically be locked once the vehicle has exceeded about 12 mph (20 km/h) ("Auto Relock" function active).

Press the  button on the driver side, passenger side or rear (where provided) door panel trims fig. 6 to lock the doors.

With the doors locked, press the  button on the front door panel trims to unlock them.



6

04056S0001EM

### LOCKING/UNLOCKING DOORS FROM THE OUTSIDE

#### Locking from the outside

With the doors closed, press the  button on the key.

The door lock can anyway be activated with all doors locked and the boot open. When button  on the key is pressed, all locks are closed, including that of the open boot. The latter will be locked when it is closed.



#### Door unlocking from the outside

Press button  on the key.

#### PASSIVE ENTRY

(where provided)



The Passive Entry system can identify the presence of an electronic key near the doors and the boot.

The system enables the doors (or the boot) to be locked/released without pressing any button on the electronic key.

The key is detected only after the system recognizes the presence of a hand in one of the front handles. If the detected key is valid, the doors and the boot are unlocked (the elements that open depend on the settings on the Connect system).

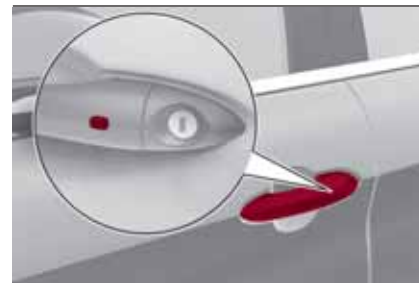
Where the function is provided, grasping the handle of the driver's door unlocks

the driver's side door or all doors depending on the mode set using the Connect system.

#### Door locking

To lock the doors, proceed as follows:

-  make sure that you have the electronic key and are close to the driver or passenger side door handle;
-  press the "door locking" button fig. 7 located on the handle or the button fig. 8 on the boot near the open button: this will lock all doors and the boot. Door locking will activate the alarm as well (where provided).



7

04056S0003EM



8

04056S0006EM

**IMPORTANT** After pressing the "door locking" button, you need to wait two seconds before the doors can be unlocked again using the door handle. It is therefore possible to check whether the vehicle is locked correctly by pulling the door handle within 2 seconds. The doors will not be unlocked again.

The vehicle doors and boot can anyway be locked pressing button  on the electronic key or on the inner door panel.

### Driver side door emergency opening

If the electronic key does not work, e.g. because its battery is flat or the vehicle battery is flat, the emergency metal insert inside the key can anyway be used to operate the lock, unlocking the driver side door.

To extract the metal insert, proceed as follows:

- ☐ Pressing in the points indicated in fig. 9, extract the cover pulling

downwards;

- ☐ remove the key insert from its housing fig. 10;
- ☐ insert the metal insert in the driver side door lock and turn it to unlock the door.



9

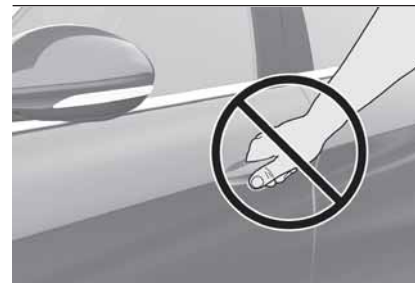
04016S0002EM



10

04016S0003EM

Do not push the lock/unlock door button fig. 7 and push the handle simultaneously, (see fig. 7).



11

04056S0004EM

### POWER LOCK (where provided)



This safety device inhibits the operation of the interior door handles and the door locking/unlocking button.

It thereby prevents the opening of the doors from inside the passenger compartment, serving as an obstacle to break-in attempts (e.g. broken window).

We recommend that you activate the device each time you park your vehicle.

### Activating the device

The device is enabled on all the doors by pressing the  button on the key twice quickly.

The direction indicators flash 3 times to let you know that the device is active.

If one or more of the doors are not closed correctly, the device will not activate,



ABC

thus preventing a person from getting stuck inside the passenger compartment by entering the vehicle through, and then closing, the open door.

### Deactivating the device

The device disengages automatically:

- ❑ when the doors are unlocked (pressing button  on the key with remote control);
- ❑ when the ignition device is set to ON.

### CHILD SAFETY DEVICE



7) 8)

This system prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside.

This device fig. 12 can be engaged only with the doors open.



12

04056S0007EM

- ❑ position  : device engaged (door locked);
- ❑ position  : device not engaged (door may be opened from the inside).

The device remains engaged even if the doors are electrically unlocked.

**IMPORTANT** The rear doors cannot be opened from the inside when the child safety device is engaged.

### UNLOCKING THE DOORS WITH A FLAT BATTERY

Proceed as follows to unlock the doors if the vehicle battery is flat.

#### Rear doors and passenger door

Proceed as follows:

- ❑ insert the metal insert of the electronic key in the release device housing fig. 13;



13

04056S0008EM

- ❑ turn the key clockwise for the right door locks or anticlockwise for the left door locks;

- ❑ remove the key from the housing.

Proceed as follows to realign the door

lock device (only when the battery charge has been restored):

- ❑ press the  button on the electronic key;
- ❑ press the  button on the door panel;
- ❑ open by inserting the key insert in the driver's door lock;
- ❑ operate the internal door handle.

**IMPORTANT** For the rear doors, if the child lock device was engaged and the previously described locking procedure carried out, operating the internal handle will not open the door but will only realign the lock release device. To open the door, the outside handle must be used. The door central locking/unlocking buttons are not deactivated when the emergency lock is engaged.



### WARNING

**6)** Once the Power Lock system is engaged, it is impossible to open the doors from inside the vehicle. Before getting out of the car, please therefore check that there is no-one left inside.

**7)** NEVER leave children unattended inside the car, let alone leave the car with the doors unlocked in a place that children can access easily. Children may seriously, or even fatally, injure themselves. Also ensure that children do not inadvertently operate the electric parking brake, the brake pedal or the transmission lever.

**8)** Always use this device when carrying children. After engaging the child lock on both rear doors, check for effective engagement by trying to open a door with the internal handle.



### IMPORTANT

**2)** Make sure to take the key with you once a door or the boot is locked, to prevent forgetting the key inside the vehicle. If the key has been locked in, it can only be recovered using the second provided key.

**3)** The operation of the recognition system depends on various factors, such as, for example, any electromagnetic wave interference from external sources (e.g. mobile phones), the charge of the battery in the electronic key and the presence of metal objects near the key or the car. In these cases it is still possible to unlock the doors by using the metal insert in the electronic key (see description on the following pages).

## SEATS



### FRONT SEATS WITH MANUAL ADJUSTMENT



9)



4)

#### Longitudinal adjustment

Lift lever 1 fig. 14 and push the seat forwards or backwards.



10)



14

04066S0001EM

**IMPORTANT** Carry out the adjustment while sitting on the seat involved (driver side or passenger side).

#### Height adjustment

Adjust lever 2 fig. 14 upwards or downwards to obtain the required height.

**IMPORTANT** Carry out the adjustment while sitting on the seat involved (driver side or passenger side).

#### Backrest angle adjustment

Move lever 3 fig. 14 to adjust the backrest angle, accompanying it with the movement of the torso (operate the lever until the desired position is reached, then release it).

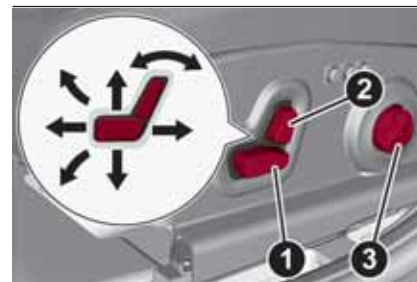
### ELECTRICALLY ADJUSTABLE FRONT SEATS



5)

The buttons for electrical seat adjustment are on the outer side of the seat, near the floor.

These buttons can be used to adjust the height, the lengthwise position in relation to the vehicle and the angle of the backrest.



15

04066S0003EM

#### Height adjustment

Use the rear part of the switch 1 fig. 15 to modify the height and/or the angle of the seat cushion.



ABC

### Longitudinal adjustment

Push switch 1 fig. 15 forwards or backwards to move the seat in the corresponding direction.

### Backrest angle adjustment

Push switch 2 fig. 15 forwards or backwards to adjust the backrest in the corresponding direction.

### Electric lumbar adjustment

Use the joystick 3 to operate the lumbar support device to obtain maximum driving comfort.

Press the following parts of the joystick:

- ☐ *top*: inflates the cushion;
- ☐ *bottom*: deflates the cushion;
- ☐ *front*: inflates the upper part of the cushion;
- ☐ *rear*: inflates the lower part of the cushion;

**IMPORTANT** The electrical adjustment is only allowed when the ignition device is turned to ON and for about 60 seconds after it is turned to STOP. The seat can also be moved for about 60 seconds after opening/closing the door, locking/unlocking the vehicle or switching the front central courtesy light on.

### Seat angle adjustment (tilting)

(where provided)

The seat cushion angle can be set to four positions. Lift or push the front part of control 1 fig. 15 to move the front part of the seat in the corresponding direction. Release control 1 when the seat has reached the desired position.

### Backrest width adjustment

(where provided)

Press switches 4 fig. 16 to adjust the backrest width to your body shape, by introducing air into the side padding. A better fitting backrest holds the body better when cornering.



16

04066S0015EM

### Storing the driver's seat positions

Buttons 5 fig. 16 allow to store and recall three different driver's seat positions. Storing and recalling is possible with the ignition device in the ON position, for

3 minutes after having opened the driver's side door or until the door is closed, even with the ignition device in the STOP position. To memorise a seat position, adjust it with the various controls, then press the button where you want to memorise the position for 1.5 seconds. To recall a memorised position, press the relevant button briefly.

### FRONT SEAT ELECTRIC HEATING

(where provided)

With ignition device at ON, press buttons 17 fig. 17 on the dashboard.



17

04066S0004EM

You can select three heating levels:

- ☐ *"minimum heating"*: one orange LED lit on the buttons;
- ☐ *"average heating"*: two orange LEDs lit on the buttons.
- ☐ *"maximum heating"*: three orange LEDs lit on the buttons.

Press the buttons for a few seconds to activate the "fast maximum heating" function.

After selecting one heating level, you need to wait for a few minutes until warm air flows into the compartment.

**IMPORTANT** To preserve the battery charge, this function cannot be activated when the engine is off.

### REAR SEATS



11)

Three passengers can be seated on the rear seats.



18

04066S0005EM

### SPLIT FOLDING REAR SEAT

(where provided)

The boot can be partially (1/3 or 2/3) or totally extended by splitting the rear seat.



19

04066S0005EM

### Partial extension of the luggage compartment (1/3 or 2/3)



6)

Extending the right side of the boot allows you to carry two passengers on the left part of the rear seat, while extending the left side allows you to carry one passenger.

Proceed as follows:

- ☐ completely lower the rear seat head restraints;
- ☐ place the seatbelt so that it doesn't impede the movement of the backrest while tilting it;
- ☐ operate lever 1 fig. 20 (inside the luggage compartment) to tilt the left part, or lever 2 to tilt the right part of the backrest: it will automatically tilt forward. If necessary, accompany the backrest during the initial stage of tilting.



20

04066S0007EM

### Repositioning the backrests

Move the seatbelts to the side, making sure that they are correctly extended and not twisted and that they are not trapped behind the backrests of the seats, then lift the backrests pushing them back until you hear the locking click on both attachment mechanisms.



12)

### Central backrest section tilting

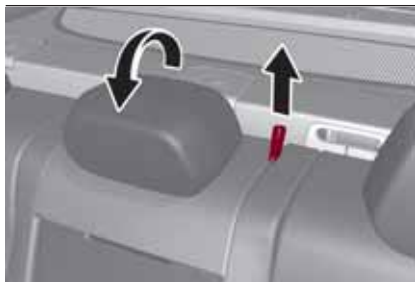
Before tilting the backrest, make sure that the rear central seatbelt is not fastened and that there aren't any objects in the central part of the cushion (if there are any, remove them).

Using the fig. 21 device, release the central part of the backrest from its housing and tilt it using the head restraint.



ABC





21

04066S0008EM

### Central backrest section repositioning

Using the head restraint, lift the central portion upwards, accompanying it during its movement, lightly press to make sure that it is properly attached. Make sure that the armrest is properly attached by trying to move it, if it is not attached, repeat the operation.



### WARNING

- 9)** All adjustments must be made with the car stationary.
- 10)** Once you have released the adjustment lever, always check that the seat is locked on the guides by trying to move it back and forth. If the seat is not locked into place, it may unexpectedly slide and cause the driver to lose control of the car.
- 11)** Always make sure that all those on board the car are seated and are wearing their seat belts correctly.

- 12)** Make sure the backrests are properly secured at both sides to prevent them from moving forward, in the event of sharp braking, with possible impact with of the passengers.



### IMPORTANT

- 4)** The fabric upholstery of the seats has been designed to withstand long-term wear deriving from normal use of the car. Some precautions are however required. Avoid prolonged and/or excessive rubbing against clothing accessories such as metal buckles and Velcro strips which, by applying a high pressure on the fabric in a small area, could cause it to break, thereby damaging the upholstery.
- 5)** Do not place any kind of items under the electrically adjusted seats as they could impede their movement or otherwise damage the controls.
- 6)** Before tilting the backrest, remove any objects on the seat cushion.

## HEADRESTS



### ADJUSTMENTS



13)

They are height-adjustable: to adjust them operate as follows.

Upward adjustment: raise the head restraint until it clicks into place.

Downward adjustment: press button 1 fig. 22 (front head restraints) or 1 fig. 23 (side head restraints) and lower the head restraint.



22

04076S0001EM

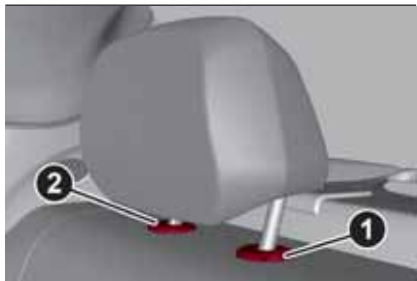
**IMPORTANT** To permit maximum visibility for the driver, if the head restraints are not used, they are moved to the rest position: fully down.



## HEAD RESTRAINTS (removal)

Proceed as follows to remove the head restraints:

- raise the head restraints to their maximum height;
- press button 1 and device 2 fig. 22 (front head restraints) or 1 and 2 fig. 23 (rear head restraints) at the side of the two supports, then remove the head restraints by pulling them upwards.



23

04076S0002EM



### WARNING

**13)** Head restraints must be adjusted so that the head, rather than the neck, rests on them. Only in this case they can protect your head correctly. Any removed head restraints must be repositioned correctly, in order to protect the occupants in the event of impact: follow the instructions above.

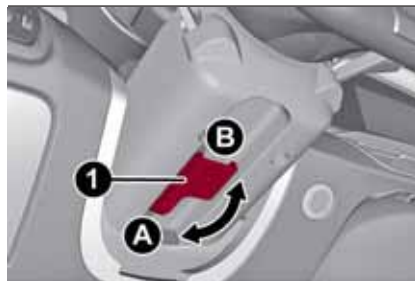
## STEERING WHEEL



14) 15)

### ADJUSTMENTS

The steering wheel can be adjusted both in height and in depth.



24

04086S0001EM

To adjust the position bring the lever 1 fig. 24 down to position A after which the steering wheel can be adjusted to the most suitable position and subsequently locked in this position by bringing lever 1 to position B again.

## ELECTRIC STEERING WHEEL HEATING

(where provided)

With ignition device at ON, press the fig. 25 button on the air conditioner control panel.



25

04086S0002EM

When the function is enabled, the LED on the button switches on.

**IMPORTANT** If this function is activated with the engine stopped the battery may run down.



### WARNING

**14)** All adjustments must be carried out only with the car stationary and engine stopped.

**15)** It is absolutely forbidden to carry out any after-market operation involving steering system or steering column modifications (e.g. installation of anti-theft device) that could adversely affect performance, invalidate the warranty, cause **SERIOUS SAFETY PROBLEMS** and also result in the car not meeting type-approval requirements.



## REAR VIEW MIRRORS



### INTERIOR MIRROR

Operate lever fig. 26 to adjust the mirror into two different positions: normal or anti-glare.



26

04106S0001EM

The mirror is fitted with a safety device that causes its release in the event of a violent impact with the passenger.

### ELECTROCHROMIC INTERIOR MIRROR (where provided)

On some versions, an electrochromic mirror is available, that can automatically modify its reflecting action to prevent dazzling the driver fig. 27.

The electrochromic mirror has an ON/OFF button to activate/deactivate the electrochromic anti-glaring function.



27

04106S0002EM

When reverse gear is engaged, the mirror is automatically set for daytime use.

### DOOR MIRRORS

#### Electric adjustment

The mirrors can only be adjusted with the ignition device at ON.

Select the desired mirror using device 1 fig. 28:



28



16)

04106S0004EM

□ device in position A: left mirror selected;

□ device in position B: right mirror selected.

To adjust the selected mirror, use device 1 in the four directions.

**IMPORTANT** Once adjustment is complete, rotate device 1 to position D to prevent accidental movements.

#### Manual folding

To fold the mirrors move them from the open position to the closed position fig. 29.



29

04106S0005EM

#### Electric folding

(where provided)

With device 1 in position D, move it to position C fig. 28. Turn the device 1 again to position C to return the mirrors to the driving position.

If device 1 is turned again during door mirror folding (from closed to open position and vice versa), their movement direction is reversed.

### Automatic activation

Activating the central door locking system from outside the vehicle automatically folds the mirrors, they return to the driving position when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

If the door mirrors were folded in using device 1, they can only be returned to the driving position by means of a new command on the same device.

**IMPORTANT** The mirrors must always be open while driving and should never be folded.

### ELECTROCHROMIC EXTERIOR MIRRORS

(where provided)

As well as an inside mirror, an electrochromic mirror is also available on some versions, which automatically modifies its reflecting properties to prevent dazzling the driver. The dazzle-prevention electrochromic enabling/disabling button fig. 27 is the same for all rear view mirrors.



#### WARNING

**16)** As door mirrors are curved, and therefore they may slightly alter the perception of distance.

## EXTERNAL LIGHTS



### LIGHT SWITCH

The light switches fig. 30, located on the left side (left hand drive versions) or on the right side (right hand drive versions) of the dashboard, controls operation of headlights, side lights, daytime running lights, dipped beam headlights, front and rear fog lights.



30

0412650005EM

The external lights can be activated only when the ignition device is in position ON, except for the parking lights. See the "Parking lights" paragraph, in this chapter for more information.

The instrument panel and the various controls on the dashboard will be lit up when the exterior lights are switched on.

### AUTO FUNCTION (dusk sensor)

This is an infrared LED sensor that works in conjunction with the rain sensor and is located on the windscreen. It is able to detect variations in outside lighting based on the light sensitivity set via the Connect system.

The higher the sensitivity, the lower the amount of external light needed to switch the lights on.

#### Function activation

Turn the light switch to AUTO.

**IMPORTANT** The function can only be activated with the ignition device at ON.

#### Function deactivation

To deactivate the function, turn the light switch to a position other than AUTO.

### DIPPED HEADLIGHTS

Turn the light switch to  to switch on the side lights, the lights on the instrument panel and the dipped beam headlights.

The  warning light switches on in the instrument panel.

### DAYTIME RUNNING LIGHTS (DRL) AND SIDE/TAIL LIGHTS (where provided)



17) 18)

With the ignition device turned to ON and the light switch turned to position **O** the daytime running lights are automatically



ABC

activated; the other lights and interior lighting remain off.

Where provided, if the direction indicators are operated, the brightness of the corresponding DRL will be decreased as long as the direction indicators are on.

Where provided, the DRL can be activated/deactivated from Connect system, by selecting the following functions in sequence on the main Menu: "Settings", "Lights" and "Daytime Lights".

**IMPORTANT** : on markets where DRL use is not required, these lights work as side lights and they are switched on and off jointly with the main beam headlights.

### **FRONT FOG LIGHTS** (where provided)

The fog light switch is integrated with the light switch.

Press the  button to turn on the fog lights with side lights and dipped beam headlights on.

To turn off the fog lights, press the  button again or turn the switch to the **O** position.

The fog lights are switched on with the dipped beam headlights or DRL on (the latter work as side lights) and are switched on when switching on the main beam headlights but not when the main beam headlights are flashed only.

If the fog lights are not switched off before stopping the engine, the next time the engine is started they will switch on again.

### **Cornering lights** (where provided)

The fog lights perform cornering function. This function allows to illuminate the road or a corner better by lighting the corresponding fog light.

The cornering function can be deactivated on the Connect system by selecting the following functions in sequence on the main menu: "Settings", "Lights" and "Cornering Lights".

### **REAR FOG LIGHT**

The rear fog light switch is integrated with the light switch.

Press the  button to switch the light on/off.

The rear fog light switches on only when the dipped beam headlights or fog lights are switched on. The light can be switched off by pressing the  button again or by switching off the dipped beam headlights.

When the engine is stopped with the rear fog lights on, the next time the engine is started the lights will, however, be off.

## **PARKING LIGHTS**

They are switched on if, within a few seconds from stopping the engine, the light switch is taken first to the **O** position and then to position **P**. All side lights switch on, if you want to leave only those on one side (right/left) switched on, you need to move the direction indicators control on the position on the side you wish to leave on.

The  warning light switches on in the instrument panel.

## **HEADLIGHTS OFF TIMER**

The "Follow Me" function delays the switching off of the headlights after the vehicle has been stopped.

The function can be activated from the Connect system by selecting the following functions in sequence on the main menu: "Settings", "Lights" and "Follow me"; the side lights and the dipped beam headlights stay on for a time that can be set between 30, 60 and 90 seconds.

### **Function activation**

With the headlights on, take the ignition device to the STOP position: the timer starts when the light switch is rotated to position **O**.

**IMPORTANT** To activate this function the headlights must be deactivated within

2 minutes after the ignition device has been taken to STOP.

### Function deactivation

This function is deactivated by switching on the headlights, the side lights or bringing the ignition device to ON.

### AFS (Adaptive Frontlight System) FUNCTION (where provided)

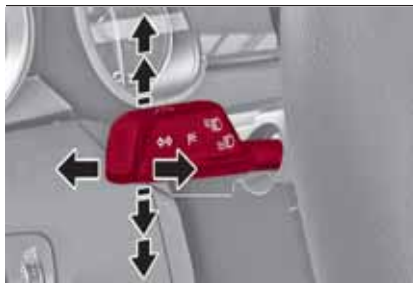
This is a system combined with Bi-Xenon Headlamps (35W) which directs the main light beam, horizontally and vertically, and continuously and automatically adapts it to the driving conditions round bends/when cornering.

The system directs the light beam to light up the road in the best way, taking into account the speed of the car, the bend/corner angle and the speed of steering.

### MAIN BEAM HEADLIGHTS

To activate the fixed main beam headlights push the left lever towards the instrument panel fig. 31. The light switch must be turned to **AUTO** or .

With main beam headlights on, the  warning light/icon on the instrument panel will come on at the same time.



31

0412650020EM

The main beam headlights are switched off by pushing the left stalk forward again. Warning light/icon  switches off in the instrument panel.

### Flashing the headlights

The flashing of the main beam headlights is activated by pulling the left stalk towards the steering wheel, the lights remain on while you are operating the lever.

### Automatic high beam headlights (where provided)

In order not to dazzle other road users, the lights are automatically deactivated when approaching vehicles travelling in the opposite direction or when following a vehicle travelling in the same direction.

This function is enabled with the Connect system and with the light switch turned to AUTO.

The first time the main beam headlights are activated (pushing the left lever), the function is activated (the warning light  or the  symbol comes on in the instrument panel).

If the main beam headlights are actually on, the blue icon/warning light  will also come on in the instrument panel.

### DIRECTION INDICATORS

Move the left lever fig. 31 as far as possible (unstable position):

 up: right direction signal activated, the warning light  flashes on the instrument panel;

 down: left direction signal activated, the warning light  flashes on the instrument panel;

The direction indicators are switched off automatically when the steering wheel is straightened.

### "Lane Change" function

When you want to signal the change of the driving lane, move the lever until the first impulse (about half stroke).

The direction indicator on the side selected will flash five times and then switch off automatically.

### SBL FUNCTION (Static Bending Light) (where provided)

The SBL LEDs activate in order to better illuminate the street and increase the light angle while turning. This function is



ABC

enabled by rotating the light switch to position  $\text{D}$  or **AUTO**. The SBL LEDs activate if the speed exceeds 12 mph (20 km/h) and the steering radius is below 1640 ft (500 m).

## HEADLIGHT ALIGNMENT ADJUSTMENT

### Headlight alignment corrector

(where provided)

This device is not available on vehicles equipped with Xenon headlights (Bi-Xenon 35 W headlamp version), as they require an automatic alignment correction system.

It only operates with the ignition device at ON.



32

04126S0015EM

To adjust it, rotate the ring nut fig. 32.

- ☐ Position 0: one or two people on the front seats;
- ☐ Position 1: 4 or 5 passengers;

- ☐ Position 2: 4 or 5 passengers + load in the luggage compartment
- ☐ Position 3: driver + maximum admissible load stowed only in the luggage compartment

**IMPORTANT** Check the headlight alignment each time the weight of the load transported changes.

## INSTRUMENT PANEL AND CONTROL BUTTON GRAPHIC BRIGHTNESS ADJUSTMENT

With side lights or headlights on, operate on the ring nut fig. 33 upwards to increase light brightness of the instrument panel and of the control button graphics, or turn the ring nut downwards to decrease it. The control is pulsed so that for every action the level intensity increases/decreases, up to a maximum of seven.



33

04126S0016EM



## WARNING

**17)** The daytime running lights are an alternative to the dipped headlights for driving during the daytime in countries where it is compulsory to have lights on during the day; where it is not compulsory, the use of daytime running lights is permitted.

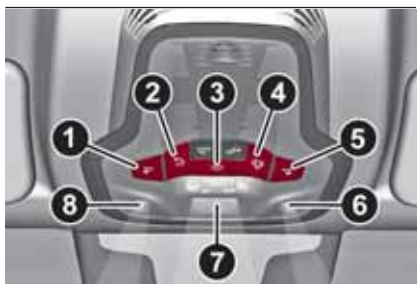
**18)** Daytime running lights cannot replace dipped beam headlights when driving at night or through tunnels. The use of daytime running lights is governed by the highway code of the country in which you are driving. Comply with legal requirements.

## INTERIOR LIGHTS



### FRONT CEILING LIGHT

- ❑ Switch 1 fig. 34 switches on/off light 8.
- ❑ Switch 2 is used to switch the rear ceiling lights on/off.
- ❑ Switch 3 switches on/off all lights inside the ceiling lights (front and rear) in the passenger's compartment.
- ❑ Switch 4 activates or deactivates the ceiling light 6, 7, 8 switching on/off upon opening/closing the doors. Lights switch on/off progressively.
- ❑ Switch 5 switches on/off light 6.



34

0413650001EM

### Ceiling light timing

On certain versions, to facilitate getting in/out of the vehicle at night or in poorly-lit areas, two timed modes have been provided.

## WINDSCREEN WIPER



### SCREEN WIPER/WASHER



This operates only with the ignition device at ON.

Ring nut fig. 35 can be set to the following positions:

- 0 windscreen wiper off.
- A rotating the ring nut to the first position activates the first sensitivity level of the rain sensor.
- A rotating the ring nut to the second position activates the second sensitivity level of the rain sensor.
- rotating the ring nut to the third position activates the first continuous speed level of the windscreen wipers in manual mode.
- rotating the ring nut to the fourth position activates the second continuous speed level of the windscreen wipers in manual mode.



35

0414650001EM

Move the stalk upwards (unstable position) to activate the MIST function: operation is limited to the time for which the stalk is held in this position. When released, the stalk will return to its default position and the windscreen wiper will be automatically stopped. This function is useful to remove small deposits of dust from the windscreen, or morning dew.

**IMPORTANT** This function does not activate the windscreen washer; windscreen washer fluid will not therefore be sprayed onto the windscreen. To spray windscreen washer fluid onto the windscreen, the washing function must be used.

With ring nut in position • or •, the windscreen wiper will automatically adapt its operating speed to the speed of the vehicle.



ABC



## “Smart washing” function

Pull the stalk towards the steering wheel (unstable position) to operate the windscreen washer.

Keep the stalk pulled to activate both the windscreen washer jet and the windscreen wiper with a single movement; the latter turns on automatically.

The windscreen wiper stops working three strokes after the stalk is released.

A further stroke after approx. 6 seconds completes the wiping cycle.

## RAIN SENSOR

This is located behind the interior rear view mirror, in contact with the windscreen and can detect the presence of rain and, consequently, manage the cleaning of the windscreen in accordance with the amount of water on the screen.

## Activation/deactivation



9) 10)

Rotating the ring nut fig. 35 to position **•A** or **•A** activates the rain sensor.

The activation of the sensor is signalled by a flick of the wiper (indicating that the command has been acquired).

To deactivate the system, use ring nut fig. 35 or turn the ignition device to STOP. If the ignition device is moved to STOP position, leaving the ring nut fig. 35 in

**•A** or **•A**, when the vehicle is next started (ignition device at ON), no wiping cycle occurs even if it rains.



19)



## WARNING

**19)** Make sure the device is switched off whenever the windscreen must be cleaned.



## IMPORTANT

**7)** Never use the windscreen wipers to remove layers of snow or ice from the windscreen. In such conditions, the windscreen wiper may be subjected to excessive stress and the motor cut-out switch, which prevents operation for a few seconds, may intervene. If operation is not subsequently restored, even after restarting the engine, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

**8)** Do not operate the windscreen wiper with the blades lifted from the windscreen.

**9)** Do not activate the rain sensor when washing the car in an automatic car wash.

**10)** Make sure the device is switched off if there is ice on the windscreen.



## CLIMATE CONTROL



### AUTOMATIC DUAL-ZONE CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM



#### Controls



36

04156S0005EM

1. Driver side temperature adjustment knob; 2. Driver side AUTO function activation button (automatic operation); 3. Driver's side air distribution selection button; 4. MAX-DEF function activation button (rapid defrosting/demisting); 5. Fan speed adjustment knob; 6. Heated rear window on/off button; 7. Passenger side air distribution selection button; 8. Passenger side AUTO function activation button (automatic operation); 9. Passenger side temperature adjustment knob; 10. SYNC function button (set temperature alignment) driver/passenger side; 11. Passenger side seat heater activation button; (where provided, see chapter on seats); 12. Climate control compressor on/off button; 13. Steering wheel heater activation button; (where provided, see chapter on steering wheel); 14. Driver side seat heater activation button; (where provided, see chapter on "Seats"); 15. On/off button for internal air recirculation.



-  Air flow to the windscreen and front side window vents to demist/defrost them.
-  Air flow at central and side dashboard vents to ventilate the chest and the face during the hot season.
-  Air flow to the front and rear footwell vents. This air distribution setting heats the passenger compartment most quickly, giving a prompt sensation of warmth.
-  Air flow distributed between footwell vents (hotter air) and central and side dashboard vents (cooler air). This air distribution setting is useful in spring and autumn on sunny days.
-  Air flow distributed between footwell vents and windscreen and front side window defrosting/demisting vents. This distribution setting allows the passenger compartment to be warmed up efficiently and prevents the windows from misting up.

-  Air flow distribution between windscreen demisting/defrosting vents and side and central dashboard vents. This allows air to be sent to the windscreen in conditions of strong sunlight.
-  Air flow distribution to all diffusers on the vehicle.

In AUTO mode, the air conditioner automatically manages the air distribution. When set manually, the air distribution is indicated by the respective symbols on the Connect system display switching on.

### START & STOP EVO

The automatic dual zone climate control system interacts with the Start & Stop Evo system (engine off when vehicle speed is 0 mph (0 km/h)) to ensure adequate comfort inside the vehicle.

In particular, the climate control system deactivates the Start & Stop Evo if:

- ☐ the climate control system is in AUTO mode (LED on the button switched on) and the temperature conditions inside the vehicle are far from a comfort temperature;
- ☐ the climate control system is in LO for maximum cooling;
- ☐ the climate control system is in the MAX-DEF status.

With Start & Stop Evo system on (engine

off and vehicle speed equal to 0 mph (0 km/h)), the flow is reduced as much as possible, to keep the compartment comfort conditions for longer.



### IMPORTANT

**2)** The system uses R1234yf coolant gas, which does not pollute the environment in the event of accidental leakage. Under no circumstances use R134a and R12 fluids, which are incompatible with the components of the system.

## WINDOW WINDERS



### ELECTRIC WINDOWS



They work with the ignition device in the ON position and for about 3 minutes after the ignition device has been turned to the STOP position. When one of the front doors is opened this operation is disabled.

#### Driver side front door controls

The buttons are located on the door panel trim. All windows can be controlled from the driver side door panel fig. 37.



37

04166S0001EM

❑ 1: front left window opening/closing. "Continuous automatic" operation during window opening/closing stage and anti-pinch system activated.

❑ 2: front right window opening/closing. "Continuous automatic" operation during window opening/closing stage and anti-pinch system activated.

❑ 3: rear right window opening/closing. "Continuous automatic" operation during window opening/closing stage and anti-pinch system activated.

❑ 4: enabling/disabling of rear door electric window controls;

❑ 5: rear left window opening/closing. "Automatic continuous" operation during window opening/closing and anti-pinch system activated.

#### Window opening

Push the buttons to open the desired window.

When any of the opening buttons on front or rear doors is pressed once briefly, the window moves in stages; while pressing the button for a second time, the "continuous automatic" operation is activated.

If the button is pressed again, the window will stop in the desired position.

#### Window closing

Lift the buttons to close the desired window.

The window closing stage occurs following the same logic described for the opening stage both of the front door windows and the rear door windows.

### Window anti-pinch safety device

This safety system can recognise the presence of any obstacle during the window closing movement. If this occurs, the system stops the window's movement and reverts it, depending on its position.

The anti-pinch safety function is activated both during the manual and the automatic operation of the window.

#### Electric window system initialisation

If power supply is interrupted, the electric window automatic operation must be reinitialised.

The initialisation procedure described below must be carried out with the doors closed and for each door:

- ❑ fully close the window to be initialised, with manual operation;
- ❑ after the window has reached the upper end of travel, hold the up button down for at least 3 seconds.



#### WARNING

**20)** *Incorrect use of the electric windows may be dangerous. Before and during operation, always check that nobody is exposed to the risk of being injured either directly by the moving window or through objects getting caught or hit by it.*



ABC

## ELECTRIC SUNROOF

(where provided)



21)

The electric sunroof comprises two glass panels (the front one is mobile and the rear one fixed) and is fitted with an electrically operated front sun blind and a manually operated rear sun blind.

Operation of the sunroof is only possible with the ignition device at AVV.

### OPENING

Press button 1 fig. 38 near the  $\triangle$  symbol: to open the roof completely.



11)

The automatic motion can be interrupted in any position by pressing button 1 again.



38

04186S0001EM

### CLOSING

From the position of complete opening press button 1 next to the  $\nabla$  symbol: the roof will close completely.

The automatic motion can be interrupted in any position by pressing button 1 again.

### SWIVEL OPENING

To bring the roof into swivel position, press and release the specific button 2 fig. 38.

This type of swivel opening can be activated irrespective of the position of the sun roof. When starting with the roof in closed position, pressing the button automatically causes its swivel-opening. If the roof is already open, the button must be held until the roof reaches the swivel-opening position.

Pressing button 2 again during automatic movement of the roof will stop it.

### FRONT SUN BLIND ELECTRIC MOVEMENT

The front sun blind is electrically operated.

Press button 3 fig. 38  $\triangle$  symbol: to open the sun blinds.

Press button 3  $\nabla$  symbol: to close the sun blinds.

The automatic motion can be interrupted in any position by pressing button 3 again.

### ANTI-PINCH SAFETY DEVICE

The sun roof has an anti-pinch safety system capable of detecting the presence of an obstacle during the closing movement: if this happens, the system intervenes and the movement of the roof is immediately reversed into opening.

### INITIALISATION PROCEDURE

Automatic operation of the sunroof must be initialised again in case of faulty sunroof operation.

Proceed as follows:

- ☐ press button 1 next to the  $\nabla$  symbol to bring the roof into completely closed position;
- ☐ bring the ignition device to STOP and wait at least 10 seconds;
- ☐ set the ignition device to AVV;
- ☐ hold button 1 down for at least 10 seconds, then you should hear the mechanical stop of the roof motor;
- ☐ within 5 seconds hold button 1 down: the roof will perform a complete automatic opening and closing cycle (to indicate that the initialisation procedure has been successful). If this does not occur, the procedure must be restarted from the beginning.



## WARNING

**21)** When leaving the vehicle, make sure to take the key with you to avoid the risk of injury to those still inside the car due to accidental operation of the sunroof. Improper use of the roof can be dangerous. Before and during operation, always check that no-one is exposed to the risk of being injured by the moving sunroof or by objects getting caught or hit by it.



## IMPORTANT

**11)** Do not open the sun roof if a roof rack or crossbars are fitted. Do not open the sun roof if there is snow or ice on it: you may damage it.

## BONNET

### OPENING



22) 23)

Proceed as follows:

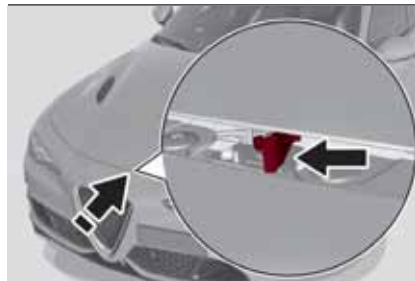
- ☐ inside the passenger compartment pull the release lever, fig. 39;



39

0419650001EM

- ☐ go to the outside of the vehicle and position yourself in front of the grille;
- ☐ lift the bonnet slightly from right to left as indicated on the unhooking device's arrow, fig. 40;



40

0419650002EM

- ☐ raise the bonnet completely: the operation is facilitated by the presence of two gas shock absorbers which hold it the all open position.

Do not tamper with the shock absorber and accompany the bonnet while lifting it.

### CLOSING



22) 24)

To close, lower the bonnet to approximately 15 in (40 cm) from the engine compartment then let it drop. Make sure that the bonnet is completely closed and not only fastened by the locking device by trying to open it. If it is not perfectly closed, do not try to press the bonnet lid down but open it and repeat the procedure.

**IMPORTANT** Always check that the bonnet is closed correctly to prevent it from opening while the vehicle is travelling. Since the bonnet is equipped with a double locking system, one for each side, you must check that it is closed on both its side ends.



## WARNING

**22)** Perform these operations only when the car is stationary.



ABC

**23)** Use both hands to lift the bonnet. Before lifting, check that the windscreen wiper arms are not raised from the windscreen or in operation, that the vehicle is stationary and that the electric parking brake is engaged.

**24)** For safety reasons, the bonnet must always be properly closed while the car is travelling. Therefore, make sure that the bonnet is properly closed and that the lock is engaged. If you discover that the bonnet is not perfectly closed during travel, stop immediately and close the bonnet in the correct manner.

## TAILGATE



The tailgate unlocking is electrically operated and is deactivated when the car is in motion.

The warning triangle 1 fig. 43 is housed inside the lining of the luggage compartment lid.

### OPENING

#### Opening from the outside

When unlocked, the boot can be opened from outside the vehicle using the electric opening button fig. 41 located between the plate lights, until you hear the unlocking click or by quickly pressing button on the remote control twice.



41

04056S0005EM

#### Opening from the inside

When unlocked, the boot can be opened from inside the vehicle using the opening button fig. 42 located under the

dashboard near the front bonnet opening lever until you hear the unlocking click.



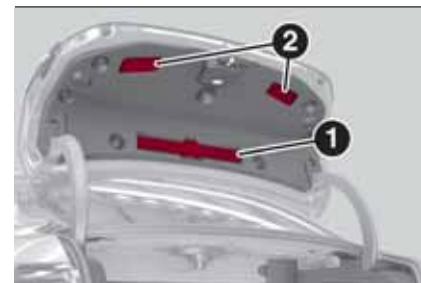
42

04206S0002EM

### CLOSING



Grip one of the handles fig. 43 and lower the boot, pressing next to the lock until it clicks.



43

04206S0003EM

**IMPORTANT** Before closing the boot make sure you have the key with you to

prevent locking it in the boot. The boot will be locked automatically and can only be opened using another key.

### BOOT INITIALISATION

**IMPORTANT** If the battery is disconnected or the protection fuse blows, the boot opening/closing mechanism must be reinitialised as follows:

- ☐ close all the doors and the boot;
- ☐ press the  button on the remote control;
- ☐ press the  button on the remote control.



### IMPORTANT

**12)** When you need to disconnect or remove the battery, do not close the boot. In order to avoid possible accidental closure, it is recommended to place an obstacle (e.g. a cloth) on the lock that would physically avoid closure.

## ROOF RACK/SKI RACK

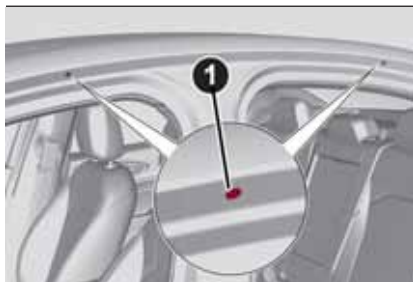
The attachments 1 fig. 44 are located in the areas illustrated in the figure and can only be accessed with the doors open.



**25) 26)**



**13) 14)**



44

04256S0001EM

Lineaccessori Alfa Romeo includes a dedicated roof rack/ski rack for this vehicle.



### WARNING

- 25)** After travelling for a few kilometres, check to ensure that the fixing screws for the attachments are well tightened.
- 26)** Distribute the load evenly and pay attention to side winds when driving.



### IMPORTANT

- 13)** Never exceed the maximum permitted loads (see chapter "Technical specifications").
- 14)** Fully comply with the regulations in force concerning maximum clearance.



ABC

*This page is intentionally left blank*





## KNOWING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL

|                                                  |    |
|--------------------------------------------------|----|
| CONTROL PANEL AND ON-BOARD INSTRUMENTS . . . . . | 40 |
| DISPLAY . . . . .                                | 42 |
| WARNING LIGHTS AND MESSAGES . . . . .            | 48 |

This section of the handbook gives you all the information you need to understand, interpret and use the instrument panel correctly.

## CONTROL PANEL AND ON-BOARD INSTRUMENTS



### 3.5" TFT DISPLAY



45

0502650001EM

1. Rev counter 2. Digital engine oil temperature gauge with overheating warning light 3. TFT Display 4. Digital fuel level gauge (the triangle on the left side of the symbol indicates the side of the vehicle with the fuel filler) 5. Speedometer (speed indicator)

## VERSIONS WITH 7" TFT DISPLAY



46

05026S0011EM

1. Rev counter 2. Digital engine oil temperature gauge with overheating warning light 3. TFT Display 4. Digital fuel level gauge (the triangle on the left side of the symbol indicates the side of the vehicle with the fuel filler) 5. Speedometer (speed indicator)

Apart from the instrument panel display size, there may be small differences according to the version or the end market destination of the car.



## DISPLAY



### DESCRIPTION

The vehicle can be equipped with a 3.5" or 7" TFT Display.

### RECONFIGURABLE TFT DISPLAY

During operation, the display is divided into multiple sections which show driving data, warnings and failure indications. fig. 47 shows the display layout, identifying the various sections.



47

05036S0001EM

## 1 Gearbox Information

### Automatic transmission

Displays the following information regarding the gearbox operation:

☐ gearbox operation mode (M, P, R, N, D). In D mode, when changing gear using the steering wheel lever (where present), or manually M, it also show the gear engaged with a number. In M mode, it also shows when to shift gear up or down by displaying an arrow.

### Manual gearbox

Displays the following information regarding the gearbox operation:

☐ the engaged gear (1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, N or R) and shows when to shift gear up or down by displaying an arrow.

## 2 Front, side anti-collision systems, Cruise Control

Displays the operation the following modes:

☐ Forward Collision Warning (FCW);  
☐ Lane Departure Warning (LDW);  
☐ Cruise Control (CC) or Active Cruise Control (ACC) (where provided).

For further information, see relevant paragraphs.

## 3 Speed limit warning light

Shows information regarding the Speed Limiter function.

For further information, see relevant paragraph.

## 4 Reconfigurable main area

Can display the following screens:

- ☐ Home.
- ☐ Trip A.
- ☐ Trip B (can be activated/deactivated by the Connect system)
- ☐ Performance.

The screens can be selected, on rotation, by pressing the button shown in fig. 48.



48

0503650002EM

Depending on the chosen driving mode (Dynamic, Normal, Advanced Efficiency and RACE), which can be selected through the "Alfa DNA™ Pro" system, the screens can be graphically different. The navigation instructions and call information can be repeated on the Connect system display and also in this area of the display. These functions can be set on the Connect system.

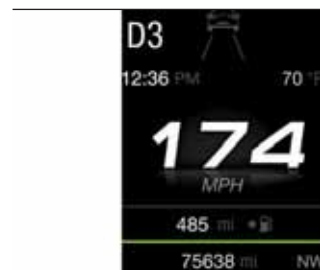
### Home

The parameters shown on the display, for

the modes: Dynamic, Normal and Advanced Efficiency are:

- ☐ Time fig. 49 or fig. 49 (on the 3.5" FT display shown only if the Phone function fig. 49 repeat mode has not previously been activated).
- ☐ Outside temperature (on the 3.5" FT display shown only if the Phone function repeat mode has not previously been activated).
- ☐ Current speed (shown if the repeat modes of the Phone and Navigation functions have not been previously activated).
- ☐ Range (on the 3.5" FT display shown if the Radio and Media functions repeat mode have not been previously activated).

### 3.5" TFT Display



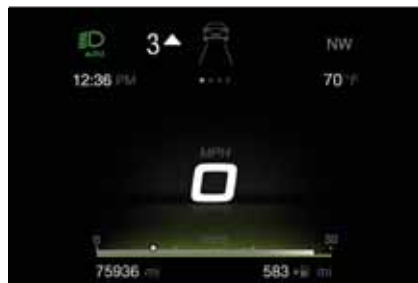
49

0503650003EM



ABC

7" TFT Display



50

05036S0104EM



51

05036S0030EM

In RACE mode (where provided) the consumption indication index is not active and a sports gearshift indicator is displayed. The sports gearshift indicator is represented by three yellow segments; if the third indicator, characterized by the wording "SHIFT", is on, it means that the gear should be shifted.

7" TFT Display



52

05036S0005EM

### Trip A and B

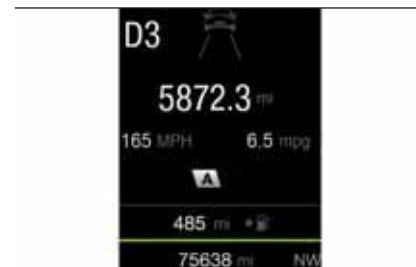
The "Trip computer" can be used to display, for all driving modes (Dynamic, Normal, Advanced Efficiency and RACE) and with the ignition device ON, the measurements regarding the operating state of the car. This function is characterised by two separate records, called "Trip A" and "Trip B" (the latter can be deactivated by the Connect system), where the car's "complete missions" (journeys) are recorded in a reciprocally independent manner.

"Trip A" and "Trip B" are used to display the values relating to:

- ☐ Distance travelled
- ☐ Average fuel consumption
- ☐ Average speed
- ☐ Active trip

☐ Fuel consumption indicator (7" TFT Display only)

3.5" TFT Display



53

05036S0006EM

7" TFT Display



54

05036S0107EM

To reset the values, press and hold down the button on the right stalk fig. 55.



55

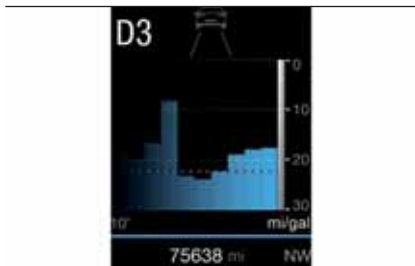
05036S0002EM

### Performance

The displayed parameters are different in function from the active mode, and the modes can be selected through the "Alfa DNA™ Pro" system and are as follows:

☐ Normal,

3.5" TFT Display



56

05036S0008EM

7" TFT Display



57

05036S0009EM

The screen graphically reproduces some parameters closely linked to the efficiency of the driving style, with a view to limiting consumption.

☐ Advanced Efficiency,

3.5" TFT Display



58

05036S0010EM

7" TFT Display



59

05036S0111EM

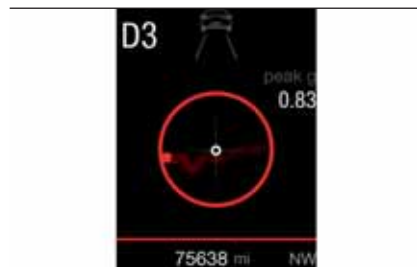
The three central icons on the screen indicate the effectiveness of the driving style, linked to the following parameters: acceleration, deceleration and gear shifts, with a view to limiting consumption. The bar below the icons shows current consumption and the green line represents the optimal area. The globe (7" TFT Display) lights up gradually according to lower consumption.

☐ Dynamic,



ABC

3.5" TFT Display



60

0503650012EM

7" TFT Display



61

0503650113EM

The displayed parameters are related to vehicle stability, the graphs illustrate the trend of the longitudinal/lateral accelerations (G-meter information), considering gravitational acceleration as a reference unit.

Lateral acceleration peaks are also indicated.

☐ Race (where provided),

7" TFT Display



62

0503650014EM

The displayed parameters are related to vehicle stability, the graphs illustrate the trend of the longitudinal/lateral accelerations (G-meter information), considering gravitational acceleration as a reference unit.

Lateral and longitudinal fig. 62 acceleration peaks are also indicated.

## 5 Compass

Views the position indicating the cardinal point.

## 6 Milometer

Indicates the total kilometres (or miles) travelled.

## 7 Failure warning lights

Area dedicated to displaying failures, the following symbols could be displayed on rotation:

- ☐ Low criticality symbols (yellow amber).
- ☐ High criticality symbols (red).

## 8 Car range (7" TFT Display only)

Indicates the kilometres (or miles) left before the fuel tank is empty.

## 9 Warning lights (7" TFT Display only)

Displays the warning light related to the active mode among the following:

- ☐ low beam headlights;
- ☐ main beam headlights;
- ☐ Auto low beam headlights;
- ☐ Auto main beam headlights.

## PARAMETERS SET BY USER



63

0503650015EM

A series of functions programmable by the user can be set using the Connect system, this paragraph describes only the basic settings, such as:

- ☐ Units & Language;
  - ☐ Clock and Date.
  - ☐ Control panel
- To access the list with the



aforementioned items, proceed as follows: from the main menu, activated by pressing the MENU button fig. 64, select the function "Settings", by turning and pressing the Rotary Pad. Turn the Rotary Pad to choose the desired option and press to activate it.



64

05036S0040EM

## Units & Language



65

05036S0016EM

The following settings can be modified when this mode is selected fig. 65:

- ☐ Measure units (by selecting this item

you can choose between the metric, imperial or custom systems; this last option lets you set the measure unit for each individual size).

- ☐ Language (by selecting this item you can choose the system viewing language).
- ☐ Restore Settings (deletes the current settings and restores the factory settings).

To access and set the various functions, turn and press the Rotary Pad to select and confirm the selection.

## Clock and Date



66

05036S0017EM

The following settings can be modified when this mode is selected fig. 66:

- ☐ Sync with GPS Time (activates/deactivates the clock synchronization through the GPS; if the function is deactivated, the options Set Time and Set Date are enabled).

- ☐ Set time (allows to manually set the time).

- ☐ Time format (allows to choose the time format between a 12-hour and a 24-hour clock).

- ☐ Set date (to set the date manually).

- ☐ Restore Settings (deletes the current settings and restores the factory settings).

To access and set the various functions, turn and press the Rotary Pad to select and confirm the selection.

## Control panel



67

05036S0018EM

The following settings can be modified when this mode is selected fig. 67:

- ☐ Warning buzzer volume (allows you to set the volume of the warning buzzer on seven levels).
- ☐ Trip B (allows you to activate/deactivate the function).



- ❑ Phone repeat (allows to activate/deactivate the repetition of the phone function screens on the instrument panel display as well).
- ❑ Audio repeat (allows to activate/deactivate the repetition of the audio (Radio and Media) function screens on the instrument panel display as well).
- ❑ Nav repeat (allows to activate/deactivate the repetition of the audio (Radio and Media) function screens on the instrument panel display as well).
- ❑ Restore Settings (deletes the current settings and restores the factory settings).

To access and set the various functions, turn and press the Rotary Pad to select and confirm the selection.

## WARNING LIGHTS AND MESSAGES



**IMPORTANT** The warning light switches on together with a dedicated message and/or acoustic signal when applicable. These indications are indicative and precautionary and as such must not be considered as exhaustive and/or alternative to the information contained in the Owner Handbook, which you are advised to read carefully in all cases. Always refer to the information in this section in the event of a failure indication.

**IMPORTANT** The failure indicators appearing on the display are divided into two categories: very serious and less serious faults. Serious faults are indicated by a repeated and prolonged warning "cycle". Less serious faults are indicated by a warning "cycle" with a shorter duration. You can stop the warning cycle in both cases by pressing the button located on the windscreen wiper lever. The instrument panel warning light will stay on until the cause of the failure is eliminated.

## WARNING LIGHTS ON INSTRUMENT PANEL

Possible detailed messages and/or acoustic signalling can be matched to a few warning lights and symbols.

### Red warning lights

| Warning light                                                                                                                                                          | What it means                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                       | INSUFFICIENT BRAKE FLUID / ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE ON<br>The warning light switches on when the ignition device is brought to ON, but it should switch off after a few seconds.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|                                                                                                                                                                        | <b>Low brake fluid level</b><br>The warning light turns on when the level of the brake fluid in the reservoir falls below the minimum level, possibly due to a leak in the circuit.<br>Go to an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the system checked as soon as possible.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|                                                                                                                                                                        | <b>Electric parking brake on</b><br>The warning light switches on when the electric parking brake is engaged.<br>Release the electric parking brake, then check that the warning light has switched off.<br>If the warning light stays on, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.<br><br>IMPORTANT If the car is parked on a gradient of more than 30% and/or the brake temperature is greater than 662°F (350°C), when the parking brake is engaged, the warning light will flash to indicate a potentially unsafe condition.                                             |
| <br> | EBD FAILURE<br>The simultaneous switching on of the  (red) and  (amber) warning lights with the engine on indicates either a failure of the EBD system or that the system is not available. In this case, the rear wheels may suddenly lock and the vehicle may swerve when braking sharply.<br>Drive very carefully to the nearest Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the system inspected immediately. |



ABC

| Warning light                                                                     | What it means                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <b>AIRBAG FAILURE</b><br>The warning light switches on when the ignition device is brought to ON, but it should switch off after a few seconds. If the warning light switches on constantly, this indicates a failure in the airbag system.  <b>27 28</b>                                                    |
|  | <b>FRONT SEAT BELTS NOT FASTENED</b><br>The warning light switches on constantly if the vehicle is stationary and the driver side or passenger side seat belt, with the passenger seated, is not fastened. The warning light flashes and a buzzer will sound if the vehicle is in motion and the driver side or passenger side seat belt, with the passenger seated, is not correctly fastened. |
|  | <b>EXCESSIVE ENGINE OIL TEMPERATURE</b><br>The warning light switches on in the case of engine oil overheating. If the problem persists, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.  <b>15</b>                                                                                                                          |



### WARNING

**27)** The fault of the  warning light is signalled by the switching on of the  icon on the instrument panel. In this case, the warning light may not indicate any faults with the restraint systems. Before proceeding, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the system checked immediately.

**28)** If the  warning light does not switch on when the ignition device is moved to ON or if it stays on when driving (together with the message on the display), there might be a fault in the restraint systems; in this case, the airbags or pretensioners may not deploy in the event of an accident or, in a lower number of cases, they could deploy erroneously. Before proceeding, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the system checked immediately.



### IMPORTANT

**15)** If the symbol switches on when driving, stop the vehicle and the engine immediately.

## Amber warning lights

| Warning light                                                                     | What it means                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p><b>ABS FAILURE</b><br/> The warning light switches on when the ignition device is brought to ON, but it should switch off after a few seconds. The warning light switches on to indicate an ABS fault. In this case the braking system maintains its efficiency unaltered but without the advantage of the ABS system.<br/> Drive carefully and contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|  | <p><b>TPMS FAILURE</b><br/> The warning light switches on when a failure is detected in the TPMS. Should one or more wheels be fitted without sensors, the display will show a warning message until initial conditions are restored.<br/> Do not continue driving with one or more flat tyres as handling may be compromised. Stop the vehicle, avoiding sharp braking and steering. Immediately restore the correct inflation pressure using the Tire Repair Kit (see "Repairing a wheel" paragraph in the "In an emergency" chapter) and contact the dedicated Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Tyre pressure low</b><br/> The warning light switches on to indicate that the tyre pressure is lower than the recommended value and/or that slow pressure loss is occurring. In these cases, optimal tyre duration and fuel consumption may not be guaranteed.<br/> In any situation in which the message on the display is "See manual", it is ESSENTIAL to refer to the contents of the "Wheels and rims" paragraph in the "Technical data" chapter, strictly complying with the indications that you find there.</p> |
| <b>ESC</b>                                                                        | <p><b>ESC SYSTEM</b><br/> When the ignition device is brought to ON, the warning light switches on, but should switch off as soon as the engine is started.<br/> <b>ESC system intervention:</b> Intervention by the system is indicated by the flashing of the warning light: it indicates that the car is in critical stability and grip conditions.</p> <hr/> <p><b>ECS system failure:</b> If the warning light does not switch off, or if it stays on with the engine running, a failure was found in the ESC system.<br/> In these cases, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Hill Start Assist system failure:</b> the switching on of the warning light indicates a Hill Start Assist system failure.<br/> In these cases, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>ESC OFF</b>                                                                    | <p><b>PARTIAL / TOTAL DEACTIVATION OF ACTIVE SAFETY SYSTEMS (where present)</b><br/> When the ignition device is brought to ON, the warning light switches on, but should switch off as soon as the engine is started. The warning light switches on to indicate that some active safety systems have been partially or totally deactivated.<br/> For further details about the active safety systems see the "Active safety systems" paragraph in the "Safety" chapter. When the active safety systems are reactivated, the warning light switches off.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |



ABC

| Warning light                                                                     | What it means                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p><b>FUEL RESERVE / LIMITED RANGE</b><br/>           The warning light (or the icon on the display) switches on when there are about 1.8 UK gal (8 litres) of fuel left in the tank, for diesel versions, and about 2.4 UK gal (9 litres) of fuel for petrol versions.  <b>29)</b></p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|  | <p><b>INJECTION / EOBD SYSTEM FAILURE</b><br/>           In normal conditions, when the ignition device is brought to ON, the warning light switches on, but it should switch off as soon as the engine is started.<br/>           The operation of the warning light may be checked by the traffic police using specific devices. Comply with the laws and regulations of the country where you are driving.  <b>16)</b></p> <hr/> <p><b>Injection system failure</b><br/>           If the warning light remains on, or it switches on whilst driving, the injection system is not working properly. The warning light on constantly signals a malfunction in the supply/ignition system which could cause high exhaust emissions, a possible loss of performance, poor driveability and high consumption.<br/>           The warning light switches off if the malfunction disappears, but is still stored by the system.<br/>           Under these conditions, the vehicle can continue travelling at moderate speed but without demanding excessive effort from the engine or high speed. Prolonged use of the car with the warning light on constantly may cause damage. Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Catalytic converter damaged</b><br/>           If the warning light flashes, it means that the catalytic converter may be damaged.<br/>           Release the accelerator pedal to lower the speed of the engine until the warning light stops flashing. Continue the journey at moderate speed, trying to avoid driving conditions that may cause further flashing and contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.</p> |



### WARNING

**29)** If the warning light (or the icon on the display) flashes whilst driving, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.



### IMPORTANT

**16)** If, turning the ignition device to ON, the warning light  does not turn on or if it turns on steadily or flashing when travelling (on some versions together with the message on the display), contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.

| Warning light                                                                     | What it means                                                                                                                                                       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>FORWARD COLLISION WARNING SYSTEM (FCW) (where available)<br/>This warning light informs the driver that the frontal collision alarm function is not enabled.</p> |
|  | <p>REAR FOG LIGHT<br/>The warning light switches on when the rear fog light is activated.</p>                                                                       |



ABC

## Green warning lights

| Warning light                                                                     | What it means                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>SIDE LIGHTS AND DIPPED BEAM HEADLIGHTS</p> <p>The warning light switches on when the side lights or dipped headlights are turned on.</p> <p><b>"Follow me" function engaged</b></p> <p>This function allows the headlights to remain on for 30, 60 or 90 seconds after the ignition device was placed in STOP position.</p> |
|  | <p>FRONT FOG LIGHTS</p> <p>The warning light comes on when the front fog lights are turned on.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|  | <p>LEFT DIRECTION INDICATOR</p> <p>The warning light switches on when the direction indicator control stalk is moved downwards or, together with the right direction indicator, when the hazard warning light button is pressed.</p>                                                                                           |
|  | <p>RIGHT DIRECTION INDICATOR</p> <p>The warning light switches on when the direction indicator control stalk is moved upwards or, together with the left direction indicator, when the hazard warning light button is pressed.</p>                                                                                             |
|  | <p>AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM HEADLIGHTS (on 3.5" TFT Display)</p> <p>This warning light comes on when the automatic main beam headlights are activated.</p>                                                                                                                                                                          |

## Blue warning lights

| Warning light                                                                     | What it means                                                                                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>MAIN BEAM HEADLIGHTS (on 3.5" TFT display)</p> <p>The symbol comes on when the main beam headlights are activated.</p> |



## SYMBOLS ON THE DISPLAY

### Red symbols

| Symbol                                                                            | What it means                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <b>LOW ENGINE OIL PRESSURE</b><br>The symbol switches on constantly when the system detects that the engine oil pressure is insufficient. Do not use the vehicle until the failure has been solved. When the symbol turns on, it does not indicate the amount of oil in the engine: the oil level can be checked on the display upon entering the vehicle and also by activating the "Oil level" function on the Connect system. On the Quadrifoglio version, the oil level can also be checked manually.  17) |
|  | <b>ALTERNATOR FAILURE</b><br>The switching on of the symbol with engine on corresponds to an alternator failure. Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|  | <b>POWER STEERING FAILURE</b><br>If the symbol remains on, you could not have steering assistance and the effort required to operate the steering wheel could be increased; steering is, however, possible. Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|  | <b>ALFA™ SYSTEM STEERING TORQUE (AST) FAILURE</b><br>The switching on of the symbol signals a failure in the automatic steering correction system. Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the system checked.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |



### IMPORTANT

**17)** If the  symbol switches on when driving, stop the engine immediately and contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.



ABC

| Symbol                                                                            | What it means                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE TOO HIGH</p> <p>The symbol lights up when the engine has overheated.</p> <p><i>In normal driving conditions:</i> stop the car, switch off the engine and check that the coolant level in the reservoir is not below the MIN mark. In this case, wait for the engine to cool down, then slowly and carefully open the cap, top up with coolant and check that the level is between the MIN and MAX marks on the reservoir itself. Also check visually for any fluid leaks. Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership if the symbol comes on when the engine is started again.</p> <p><i>If the vehicle is used under demanding conditions (e.g. in high-performance driving):</i> slow down and, if the warning light stays on, stop the vehicle. Stop for 2 or 3 minutes with the engine running and slightly accelerated to facilitate better coolant circulation, then turn the engine off. Check that the coolant level is correct as described above.</p> |
|  | <p>DOOR OPEN</p> <p>The symbol switches on when one or more doors are not completely shut. An acoustic signal is activated with the doors open and the car moving.</p> <p>Close the doors properly.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|  | <p>BONNET NOT PROPERLY SHUT</p> <p>The symbol turns on when the bonnet is not properly closed, along with the icon, an image of the vehicle with an open bonnet appears on the display.</p> <p>A buzzer is heard when the bonnet is open and the vehicle is moving.</p> <p>Close the bonnet properly.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|  | <p>BOOT NOT PROPERLY SHUT</p> <p>The symbol turns on when the boot is not properly closed, along with the icon, an image of the vehicle with an open boot appears on the display.</p> <p>A buzzer is heard when the boot is open and the vehicle is moving.</p> <p>Close the boot properly.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

| Symbol                                                                            | What it means                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p><b>AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FAILURE</b><br/> The symbol switches on, together with a buzzer warning, to indicate that the automatic transmission is faulty. Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.  <b>18)</b></p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|  | <p><b>INSUFFICIENT ENGINE OIL LEVEL</b><br/> The symbol switches on, along with the related message on the display, to indicate low engine oil level. On the QV version, the level must also be checked using the dipstick below the boot (see chapter "Servicing and care").</p> <p><b>OIL OVER MAXIMUM LEVEL</b><br/> The symbol switches on, along with the respective message on the display, to indicate that the engine oil level is too high. Go to an Alfa Romeo dealership as soon as possible to have the correct level restored. Run the engine under 3000 rpm during this time.</p> |
|  | <p><b>SPEED LIMIT EXCEEDED</b><br/> (where provided)<br/> The symbol switches on when the speed limit of 75 mph (120 km/h) is exceeded.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |


**IMPORTANT**

**18)** Driving the vehicle with this symbol on may severely damage the gearbox, with resulting breakage. The oil may also overheat: contact with hot engine or with exhaust components at high temperature could cause fires.



ABC

# Amber symbols

| Symbol                                                                            | What it means                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>ENGINE IMMOBILIZER FAILURE / BREAK-IN ATTEMPT</p> <p><b>Engine Immobilizer system failure</b><br/>The symbol switches on to report a failure of the Engine Immobilizer system. Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Break-in attempt</b><br/>The symbol switches on when the ignition device is moved to ON position, to indicate a possible break-in attempt detected by the alarm system.</p> <p><b>Electronic key not recognised</b><br/>The symbol switches on when the engine is started and the electronic key is not recognized by the system.</p> <p><b>Alarm system failure</b><br/>This symbol switches on to report an alarm system failure.</p>                                                                              |
|  | <p>POSSIBLE ICE ON ROAD</p> <p>The symbol turns on when the outside temperature falls to or below 37 °F (3°C).</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|  | <p>ENGINE OIL DETERIORATED<br/>(where provided)<br/>The symbol is displayed only for a limited time.</p> <p>IMPORTANT After the first indication, each time the engine is started the symbol will continue to switch on as described above until the oil is changed.<br/>If the symbol flashes, this does not mean that there is a fault on the vehicle, rather it simply reports that it is now necessary to change the oil as a result of regular use of the vehicle. The deterioration of engine oil is accelerated by using the vehicle for short drives, preventing the engine from reaching operating temperature.<br/>Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.  19)</p> |



## IMPORTANT

**19)** Deteriorated engine oil should be replaced as soon as possible after the symbol is switched on, and never more than 500 km after it first switches on. Failure to observe the above may result in severe damage to the engine and invalidate the warranty. When this symbol comes on, it does not mean that the level of engine oil is low, so if it flashes you do not need to top up the engine oil.

| Symbol                                                                             | What it means                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|   | <p><b>GLOW PLUG PREHEATING (Diesel versions)</b><br/> This warning light comes on when the ignition device is brought to ON and will switch off when the glow plugs have reached the preset temperature. The engine can be started as soon as the warning light switches off.</p> <p><b>IMPORTANT</b> In mild or high ambient temperature conditions, the warning light comes on for a very short time only.</p> |
|   | <p><b>GLOW PLUG PREHEATING FAILURE (Diesel versions)</b><br/> The warning light will flash to indicate a failure in the glow plug preheating system.<br/> In this case, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                |
|   | <p><b>ENGINE OIL PRESSURE SENSOR FAILURE</b><br/> The symbol switches on in the event of engine oil pressure sensor failure.<br/> Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|   | <p><b>ENGINE OIL LEVEL SENSOR FAILURE</b><br/> The symbol switches on in the event of engine oil level sensor failure.<br/> Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|   | <p><b>FORWARD COLLISION WARNING (FCW) SYSTEM FAILURE</b><br/> The symbol switches on in the case of failure of the Forward Collision Warning system.<br/> Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|   | <p><b>START &amp; STOP EVO SYSTEM FAILURE</b><br/> This symbol switches on to report a Stop &amp; Start Evo system failure.<br/> Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible to have the failure eliminated.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|   | <p><b>RAIN SENSOR FAILURE</b><br/> The symbol switches on in the case of failure of the automatic windscreen wiper.<br/> Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|   | <p><b>DUSK SENSOR FAILURE</b><br/> The symbol switches on in the case of failure of the automatic low beam alignment.<br/> Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|   | <p><b>BLIND SPOT MONITORING SYSTEM FAILURE</b><br/> The symbol comes on in the event of a Blind Spot Monitoring system failure.<br/> Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|  | <p><b>FUEL LEVEL SENSOR FAILURE</b><br/> The symbol switches on in the event of fuel level sensor failure.<br/> Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |



ABC

| Symbol                                                                            | What it means                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p><b>EXTERIOR LIGHTS FAILURE</b><br/> The symbol switches on to indicate a failure on the following lights: daytime running lights (DRLs) / parking lights / trailer direction indicators (if present) / trailer lights (if present) / side lights / direction indicators / rear fog light / reversing light / brake lights / number plate lights.<br/> The failure may be caused by a blown bulb, a blown protection fuse or an interruption of the electrical connection.<br/> Replace the bulb or the relevant fuse. Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.</p> |
|  | <p><b>KEYLESS START SYSTEM FAILURE</b><br/> The symbol switches on in the event of Keyless Start system failure.<br/> Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|  | <p><b>FUEL CUT-OFF SYSTEM FAILURE</b><br/> The symbol switches on in the event of fuel cut-off system failure.<br/> Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|  | <p><b>LANE DEPARTURE WARNING SYSTEM (LDW) FAILURE</b><br/> The symbol comes on in the event of a failure in the Lane Departure Warning system.<br/> Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|  | <p><b>WEAR ON BRAKE PADS</b><br/> Lights up when the brake pads have reached their wear limit.<br/> Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.</p> <p><b>IMPORTANT</b> Always use genuine parts or similar because the Integrated Brake System (IBS) could detect anomalies.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|  | <p><b>AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM HEADLIGHTS FAILURE</b><br/> (where provided)<br/> The symbol switches on to report a failure of the automatic main beam headlights.<br/> Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible to have the failure eliminated.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|  | <p><b>FUEL CUT-OFF SYSTEM OPERATION</b><br/> The symbol switches on in the event of fuel cut-off system intervention.<br/> For reactivating the fuel cut-off system, refer to the description in the "Fuel cut-off system" section in the "In an emergency" chapter. If it is not possible to restore the fuel supply, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|  | <p><b>PARK SENSORS SYSTEM FAILURE</b><br/> Lights up when the system has failed or is not available.<br/> Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the system checked.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

| Symbol                                                                            | What it means                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>TRAILER LIGHT CONTROL UNIT FAILURE</p> <p>The symbol turns on to warn of failure in the control unit that manages the trailer lights. Check that the trailer light is correctly connected to the socket. If the fault persists the next time you start the engine, contact the Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible to have the system checked.</p>                                                         |
|  | <p>AUDIO SYSTEM FAILURE</p> <p>The symbol switches on to report a failure of the audio system. Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible to have the failure eliminated.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|  | <p>CLUTCH PEDAL<br/>(where provided)</p> <p>Lights up to alert the driver to press the clutch pedal in order to start the engine. Press the clutch pedal.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|  | <p>WINDSCREEN WASHER LIQUID LEVEL</p> <p>The symbol appears for some seconds to indicate that the level of the windscreen and headlight washing fluid (if any) is low. Refill the liquid: to do this, please consult the "Level check" section in the "Service and care" chapter. Always use liquid with the features indicated in the "Liquids and lubricants" section in the "Technical information" chapter.</p> |



ABC

| Symbol                                                                            | What it means                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p><b>WATER IN DIESEL FILTER</b> (Diesel versions)</p> <p>The symbol switches on constantly when driving, along to indicate the presence of water in the diesel filter.  <b>20)</b></p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|  | <p><b>DPF CLEANING</b> (particulate trap) in progress (diesel versions with DPF only)</p> <p>The symbol comes on when the ignition device is brought to ON, but it should switch off after a few seconds.</p> <p>The symbol switches on constantly to indicate that the DPF system needs to eliminate the trapped pollutants (particulate) through the regeneration process.</p> <p>The symbol does not switch on during every DPF regeneration, but only when driving conditions require that the driver is notified.</p> <p>To turn off the symbol, keep the vehicle in motion until the regeneration process is over. On average, the process lasts 15 minutes. Optimal conditions for completing the process are achieved by travelling at 37 mph (60 km/h) with engine speed above 2000 rpm.</p> <p>When this symbol switches on, it does not indicate a fault and thus it should not be taken to a workshop.</p> |



### IMPORTANT

**20)** *The presence of water in the fuel system circuit may cause severe damage to the injection system and irregular engine operation. If the  symbol is displayed contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible to bleed the system. If the above indications come on immediately after refuelling, water has probably been introduced into the tank: stop the engine immediately and contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.*

| Symbol                                                                            | What it means                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p><b>AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID OVERHEATING</b></p> <p>The symbol switches on in the case of transmission overheating, after a particularly demanding use. In this case an engine performance limitation is carried out.</p> <p>Wait for the symbol to disappear with the engine off or idling.</p> |
|  | <p><b>SPEED LIMITER SYSTEM FAILURE</b></p> <p>While driving, the symbol switches on to signal a Speed Limiter system failure.</p> <p>Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible to have the failure eliminated.</p>                                                                          |
|  | <p><b>INSUFFICIENT ENGINE COOLANT LEVEL</b> (where provided)</p> <p>If the symbol switches on, it indicates a low engine coolant level condition.</p> <p>Top up, as described in the "Servicing and Care" chapter</p>                                                                                  |



| Symbol                                                                            | What it means                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | FUEL TANK PLUG<br>(where provided)<br>Lights up if the fuel tank cap is open or not properly closed.<br>Tighten the cap properly.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|  | ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE FAILURE<br>The switching on of the symbol and the message on the display signal a failure in the electric parking brake system.<br>This failure may partially or completely block the car because the parking brake could remain activated even if automatically or manually disengaged using the relevant controls. In these circumstances, you can disengage the parking brake following the emergency disengagement procedure described in the "In an emergency" chapter.<br>If you are still able to drive the car (parking brake is not engaged), drive to the nearest Alfa Romeo Dealership and remember, when executing any manoeuvres/commands, that the electric parking brake is not operational.  30) |
|  | ACTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SYSTEM FAILURE<br>While driving, if the warning light switches on it signals a failure in the Adaptive Cruise Control system.<br>Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the system checked.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

## WARNING

**30)** If a failure is present with sharp braking, the rear wheels may lock and the vehicle may swerve.

| Symbol                                                                            | What it means                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | GENERIC INDICATION<br>Signals information and failures.<br>The accompanying messages describe the failure.                                                                               |
|  | FOUR WHEEL DRIVE FAILURE<br>This symbol switches on to report a four wheel drive system failure.<br>Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible to have the failure eliminated. |
|  | AFS SYSTEM FAILURE<br>The symbol appears to indicate the automatic directional light system failure.<br>Go to an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the system checked.                       |



ABC

| Symbol                                                                            | What it means                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | WEAR ON CCB BRAKE DISCS (where provided)<br>Lights up when the carbon ceramic brake discs have reached their wear limit.<br>Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.  <b>31)</b> |
|  | DYNAMIC DRIVE CONTROL SYSTEM FAILURE<br>The switching on of the warning light signals a failure in the dynamic drive control system.                                                                                                                                           |
|  | WINDSCREEN WIPER FAILURE<br>Signals a windscreen wiper failure.<br>Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.                                                                                                                                                                           |



### WARNING

**31)** It is recommended to use only original or equivalent, bench-tested spare pads in order to ensure the original performance of the braking system.

| Symbol                                                                            | What it means                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | SOFT SUSPENSION CALIBRATION INSERTION (where provided)<br>Switches on when the most comfortable suspension setting is activated.                                                                              |
|  | SHOCK ABSORBERS FAILURE (ADC)<br>(where provided)<br>While driving, if the symbol switches on, it signals a failure in the suspension system.<br>Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the system checked. |

## Green symbols

| Symbol                                                                            | What it means                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | LOW BEAM HEADLIGHTS (on 7" TFT display)<br>The symbol comes on when the dipped beam headlights are activated.                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|  | AUTOMATIC DIPPED BEAM HEADLIGHTS (on 7" TFT display)<br>The symbol lights up when the automatic dipped beam headlights are on.                                                                                                                                                                     |
|  | START & STOP EVO OPERATION<br>The symbol comes on in the case of Start & Stop Evo system intervention (stopping the engine).<br>When the engine is restarted the symbol switches off (for the engine restarting modes see the "Start & Stop Evo" paragraph in the "Starting and driving" chapter). |
|  | CRUISE CONTROL SYSTEM<br>The symbol comes on when the Cruise Control system is activated.                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|  | ACTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SYSTEM<br>The symbol comes on when the Active Cruise Control system is activated.                                                                                                                                                                                            |

## Blue symbols

| Symbol                                                                            | What it means                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM HEADLIGHTS (on 7" TFT display)<br>The symbol comes on when the automatic main beam headlights are activated. |
|  | MAIN BEAM HEADLIGHTS (on 7" TFT display)<br>The symbol comes on when the main beam headlights are activated.                     |



*This page is intentionally left blank*



## **SAFETY**

|                                                         |    |
|---------------------------------------------------------|----|
| ACTIVE SAFETY SYSTEMS . . . . .                         | 68 |
| DRIVING ASSISTANCE SYSTEMS . . . . .                    | 71 |
| OCCUPANT PROTECTION SYSTEMS . . . . .                   | 80 |
| SEAT BELTS . . . . .                                    | 80 |
| SBA (Seat Belt Alert) SYSTEM . . . . .                  | 82 |
| PRETENSIONERS . . . . .                                 | 83 |
| CHILD PROTECTION SYSTEMS . . . . .                      | 85 |
| SUPPLEMENTARY RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS) - AIRBAG . . . . . | 97 |

The chapter that you are about to read is very important: it describes the safety systems with which the vehicle is equipped and provides instructions on how to use them correctly.

## ACTIVE SAFETY SYSTEMS

The vehicle may be equipped with the following active safety devices:

- ☐ ABS (Anti-Lock Brakes);
- ☐ DTC (Drive Train Control);
- ☐ ESC (Electronic Stability Control);
- ☐ TC (Traction Control);
- ☐ PBA (Panic Brake Assist);
- ☐ HSA (Hill Start Assist);
- ☐ AST (Alfa™ Steering Torque);
- ☐ ATV (Alfa™ Active Torque Vectoring).

For the operation of the systems, see the following pages.

### ABS (Anti-lock Braking System)

This system, which is an integral part of the braking system, prevents one or more wheels from locking and slipping in all road surface conditions, irrespective of the intensity of the braking action, ensuring that the vehicle can be controlled even during emergency braking and optimising stopping distances.

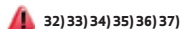
The system intervenes during braking when the wheels are about to lock, typically in emergency braking or low-grip conditions, when locking may be more frequent.

The system also improves control and stability of the vehicle when braking on a surface where the grip of the left and right wheels varies, or on corners.

The Electronic Braking Force Distribution (EBD) system completes the system allowing the brake force to be distributed between the front and rear wheels.

### System intervention

The ABS equipped on this vehicle is provided with the "Brake by wire" (Integrated Brake System - IBS) function. With this system, the brake pedal command given by pressing the brake pedal is not transmitted hydraulically but electronically, therefore, the light pulsation that could be felt on the pedal with the traditional system is no longer perceptible.



### DTC (Drive Train Control) SYSTEM (where provided)

Some versions of this vehicle are equipped with an automatically activated/deactivated four-wheel drive system (AWD), which offers an optimal drive for countless driving conditions and road surfaces. The system reduces the slipping of the tyres to a minimum, automatically redistributing the torque to the front and rear wheels, as needed. To maximize fuel savings, the vehicle with AWD automatically passes to rear four-wheel drive (RWD) when the road and environmental conditions are such that they wouldn't cause the tyres to slip.

When the road and environmental conditions require better traction, the vehicle automatically goes to AWD mode.



The driving mode, RWD or AWD, is shown on the instrument panel display.

**IMPORTANT** If the system failure symbol switches on, after starting the engine or while driving, it means that the AWD system is not working properly. If the warning message activates frequently, it is recommended to carry out the maintenance operations.



### ESC (Electronic Stability Control) SYSTEM

The ESC system improves the directional control and stability of the car in various driving conditions.

The ESC system corrects the car's understeer and oversteer, distributing the brake force on the appropriate wheels. The torque supplied by the engine can also be reduced in order to maintain control of the vehicle.

The ESC system uses sensors installed on the car to determine the trajectory that the driver intends to follow and compares it with the car's effective trajectory. When the real trajectory deviates from the desired trajectory, the

ESC system intervenes to counter the vehicle's understeer or oversteer.

❑ **Oversteer:** occurs when the car is turning more than it should according to the angle of the steering wheel.

❑ **Understeer:** occurs when the vehicle is turning less than it should according to the angle of the steering wheel.

### System intervention

The intervention of the system is indicated by the flashing of the ESC warning light on the instrument panel, to inform the driver that the vehicle stability and grip are critical.

⚠ 40) 41) 42) 43) 44)

### TC (Traction Control) SYSTEM

The system automatically operates in the event of slipping, loss of grip on wet roads (aquaplaning) and acceleration on slippery, snowy or icy roads, etc. on one or both drive wheels. Depending on the slipping conditions, two different control systems are activated:

❑ *if the slipping involves both drive wheels*, the system intervenes, reducing the power transmitted by the engine;

❑ *if the slipping only involves one of the drive wheels*, the BLD (Brake Limited Differential) function is activated, automatically braking the wheel which is slipping (the behaviour of a self-locking differential is simulated). This will increase the engine torque transferred to the wheel which isn't slipping.

### System intervention

The intervention of the system is indicated by the flashing of the ESC warning light on the instrument panel, to inform the driver that the vehicle stability and grip are critical.

⚠ 45) 46) 47) 48) 49)

### PBA (Panic Brake Assist) SYSTEM

The PBA system is designed to improve the vehicle's braking capacity during emergency braking.

The system detects emergency braking by monitoring the speed and force with which the brake pedal is pressed, and consequently applies the optimal brake pressure. This can reduce the braking distance: the PBA system therefore complements the ABS.

Maximum assistance from the PBA system is obtained by pressing the brake pedal very quickly. In addition, the brake pedal should be pressed continuously during braking, avoiding intermittent presses, to get the most out of the system. Do not reduce pressure on the brake pedal until braking is no longer necessary.

The PBA system is deactivated when the brake pedal is released.

⚠ 50) 51) 52)

### HSA (Hill Start Assist) SYSTEM

This is an integral part of the ESC system and facilitates starting on slopes, activating automatically in the following cases:

❑ *uphill:* vehicle stationary on a road with a gradient higher than 5%, engine running, brake pressed and transmission in neutral or gear other than reverse engaged;

❑ *downhill:* vehicle stationary on a road with a gradient higher than 5%, engine running, brake pressed and reverse gear engaged.

When setting off, the ESC system control unit maintains the braking pressure on the wheels until the engine torque necessary for starting is reached, or in any case for a maximum of 2 seconds, allowing your right foot to be moved easily from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

When two seconds have elapsed, without starting, the system is automatically deactivated, gradually releasing the braking pressure. During this release stage it is possible to hear a typical mechanical brake release noise, indicating the imminent movement of the car.

⚠ 53) 54)



ABC

**AST (Alfa™ Steering Torque) SYSTEM**

55)

The AST function uses the integration of the ESC system with the electric power steering to increase the safety level of the whole vehicle.

In critical situations (braking on surfaces with different grip conditions), through the AST function the ESC system controls the steering to implement an additional torque contribution on the steering wheel, to suggest the most correct manoeuvre to the driver. The coordinated action of the brakes and steering increases the sensation of safety and control of the vehicle.

**ATV (Alfa™ Active Torque Vectoring) SYSTEM**

The dynamic drive control is used to optimize and balance the drive torque between the wheels of the same axis. The ATV system improves the grip in turns, sending more drive torque to the external wheel. Given that, in a turn, the external wheels of the car travel more than the internal ones and therefore turn faster, sending a higher thrust to the external rear wheel allows for the car to be more stable and to not suffer a phenomenon called "understeer". Understeer occurs when, during a turn, a car tends to widen the set trajectory, in this situation the lateral acceleration the car is subjected to becomes higher than the grip of the

tyres, which are unable to maintain the car in the trajectory set by the driver through the steering angle determined by turning the steering wheel.

**WARNING**

**32)** For maximum efficiency of the braking system, a bedding-in period of about 500 km (310 miles) is required: during this period it is advisable to avoid sharp, repeated and prolonged braking.

**33)** If the ABS intervenes, this indicates that the grip of the tyres on the road is nearing its limit: you must slow down to a speed compatible with the available grip.

**34)** The ABS cannot overrule the natural laws of physics, and cannot increase the grip available according to the condition of the road.

**35)** The ABS cannot prevent accidents, including those due to excessive speed on corners, driving on low-grip surfaces or aquaplaning.

**36)** The capability of the ABS must never be tested irresponsibly and dangerously, in such a way as to compromise personal safety and the safety of others.

**37)** For the correct operation of the ABS, the tyres must of necessity be the same make and type on all wheels, in perfect condition and, above all, of the prescribed type and dimensions.

**38)** There may be a brief delay in shifting to AWD mode after a tyre slipping event.

**39)** When a DTC system failure symbol appears, the driver must be aware of the different driving reaction and therefore

reduce the speed. The symbol  warns the driver not to drive in areas that require four-wheel drive or on snow-covered roads.

**40)** The ESC system cannot alter the natural laws of physics, and cannot increase grip, which depends on the condition of the road.

**41)** The ESC system cannot prevent accidents, including those due to excessive speed on corners, driving on low-grip surfaces or aquaplaning.

**42)** The capability of the ESC system must never be tested irresponsibly and dangerously, in such a way as to compromise personal safety and the safety of others.

**43)** For the correct operation of the ESC system, the tyres must necessarily be of the same make and type on all wheels, in perfect condition and, above all, of the prescribed type and size.

**44)** ESC performance features must not induce the driver to take unnecessary or unwarranted risks. Your driving style must always be suited to the road conditions, visibility and traffic. The driver is, in any case, responsible for safe driving.

**45)** For the correct operation of the TC system, the tyres must of necessity be the same make and type on all wheels, in perfect condition and, above all, of the prescribed type and dimensions.

**46)** TC performance features must not induce the driver to take unnecessary or unwarranted risks. Your driving style must always be suited to the road conditions, visibility and traffic. The driver is, in any case, responsible for safe driving.

**47)** The TC system cannot overrule the natural laws of physics, and cannot increase the grip available according to the condition of the road.



**48)** The TC system cannot prevent accidents, including those due to excessive speed on corners, driving on low-grip surfaces or aquaplaning.

**49)** The capability of the TC must never be tested irresponsibly and dangerously, in such a way as to compromise personal safety and the safety of others.

**50)** The PBA system cannot overrule the natural laws of physics, and cannot increase the grip available according to the condition of the road.

**51)** The PBA system cannot prevent accidents, including those due to excessive speed on corners, driving on low-grip surfaces or aquaplaning.

**52)** The capability of the PBA system must never be tested irresponsibly and dangerously, in such a way as to compromise the safety of the driver, the other occupants of the vehicle or any other road user.

**53)** The HSA system is not a parking brake; therefore, never leave the vehicle without having engaged the electric parking brake, turned the engine off and engaged first gear, so that it is parked in safe conditions (for further information read the "Parking" paragraph in the "Starting and driving" chapter).

**54)** There may be situations on small gradients (less than 8%), with vehicle laden, in which the Hill Start Assist system may not activate, causing a slight reversing motion and increasing the risk of collision with another vehicle or object. The driver is, in any case, responsible for safe driving.

**55)** The AST system is an aid for driving and does not relieve the driver of responsibility for driving the vehicle.

## DRIVING ASSISTANCE SYSTEMS

The vehicle can feature the following driving assistance systems:

- BSM (Blind Spot Monitoring);
- FCW (Forward Collision Warning);
- TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System).

For the operation of the systems, see the following pages.

### BSM (Blind Spot Monitoring) SYSTEM

The BSM (Blind Spot Monitoring) system uses two radar sensors, located in the rear bumper (one for each side - see fig. 68 ), to detect the presence of vehicles (vehicles, trucks, motorbikes, etc.) in the rear side blind spots of your vehicle.



68

06016S0001EM

The system warns the driver about the presence of vehicles in the detection

area by lighting up, on the relevant side, the warning light located on the door mirror (fig. 69).



69

06016S0002EM

When the engine is started the warning light turns on to signal the driver that the system is active.

### Sensors



The sensors are activated when any forward gear is engaged at a speed higher than about 6 mph (10 km/h), or when reverse is engaged.

The sensors are temporarily deactivated when the vehicle is stationary and the P (Park) mode active.

The detection area of the system covers about a lane on both sides of the vehicle (around 10 ft (3 m)).

This area begins from the door mirror and



ABC

extends for about 20 ft (6 m) towards the rear part of the vehicle.

When the sensors are active the system monitors the detection areas on both sides of the vehicle and warns the driver about the possible presence of vehicles in these areas.

While driving the system monitors the detection area from three different input points (side, rear and front) to check whether a signal needs to be sent to the driver. The system can detect the presence of a vehicle in one of these three areas.

**IMPORTANT** The system does not signal the presence of fixed object (e.g. safety barriers, poles, walls, etc.). However, in some circumstances, the system may activate in the presence of these objects. This is normal and does not indicate a system malfunction.

**IMPORTANT** The system does not warn the driver about the presence of vehicles coming from the opposite direction, in the adjacent lanes.

### **Important notes**

If a trailer is hitched to the vehicle, the system automatically deactivates.

For the system to operate correctly, the rear bumper area where the radar sensors are located must stay free from snow, ice and dirt gathered from the road surface.

Do not cover the rear bumper area where the radar sensors are located with any object (e.g. adhesives, bike rack, etc.).

If, after purchasing the vehicle, you wish to install the tow hook, you need to deactivate the system via the Connect system. To access the function, on the main menu select the following items in sequence: "Settings", "Safety" and "Blind Spot Alert".

### **Rear view**

The system detects vehicles coming from the rear part of your vehicle on both sides and entering the rear detection area with a difference in speed of less than 30 mph (50 km/h) with respect to your vehicle.

### **Overtaking vehicles**

If another vehicle is overtaken slowly (with a difference in speed of less than about 15 mph (25 km/h)) and this stays in the blind spot for about 1.5 seconds, the warning light on the door mirror of the corresponding side lights up.

If the difference in speed between the two vehicles is greater than about 15 mph (25 km/h), the warning light does not light up.

### **RCP (Rear Cross Path detection) system**

This system helps the driver during reverse manoeuvres in the case of reduced visibility.

The RCP system monitors the rear

detection areas on both sides of the vehicle, to detect objects moving towards the sides of the vehicle at a minimum speed between about 0.6 mph (1 km/h) and 2 mph (3 km/h) and objects moving at a maximum speed of 22 mph (35 km/h), as generally happens in parking areas.

The system activation is signalled to the driver by means of a visual and acoustic warning.

**IMPORTANT** If the sensors are covered by objects or vehicles, the system will not warn the driver.

### **Operating mode**

The system may be activated/deactivated via the Connect system. To access the function, on the main menu select the following items in sequence: "Settings", "Safety" and "Blind Spot Alert".

### **"Blind spot alert", "Visual" mode**

When the system is enabled, a visual warning is sent to the door mirror on the side of the detected object.

The visual warning on the mirror will blink if the driver switches on the direction indicators, thus indicating the intention to change lane.

The warning will be fixed if the driver stays on the same lane.

## "Blind spot alert" function deactivation

When the system is deactivated ("Blind Spot Alert" mode at "OFF"), the BSM or RCP systems will not emit neither acoustic warnings.

The BSM system will store the operating mode running when the engine was stopped. Each time the engine is started, the operating mode stored previously will be recalled and used.

## FORWARD COLLISION WARNING (FCW) SYSTEM

 56) 57) 58) 59) 60) 61)

 21) 22) 23) 24) 25) 26) 27) 28) 29)

This is a driving assistance system composed of a radar located behind the front bumper fig. 70 and a camera located in the central part of the windscreen fig. 71.



70

06016S0003EM



71

06016S0004EM

In the event of an imminent collision the system intervenes by automatically braking the vehicle to prevent the crash or reduce its effects.

The system provides the driver with acoustic and visual signals through specific messages on the instrument panel display.

The system may lightly brake to warn the driver if a possible frontal accident is detected (limited braking). Signals and limited braking are intended to allow the driver to react promptly, in order to prevent or reduce the effects of a potential accident.

In situations with the risk of collision, if the system detects no intervention by the driver, it provides automatic braking to help slow the vehicle and mitigate the potential frontal collision (automatic braking). If intervention by the driver on

the brake pedal is detected but not deemed sufficient, the system may intervene in order to improve the reaction of the braking system, therefore reducing vehicle speed further (additional assistance in braking stage). The system will intervene automatically in case of imminent collision or impact against a pedestrian crossing the road (speed under 30 mph (50 km/h)).

**IMPORTANT** For safety reasons, when the car has stopped, the brake callipers may remain blocked for about 2 seconds. Make sure you press the brake pedal if the vehicle moves slightly forwards.

## Engagement/disengagement

The Forward Collision Warning system can be deactivated (and then reactivated) via the Connect system. To access the function, on the main menu select the following items in sequence: "Settings", "Safety", "Forward Collision Warning" and "Status".

The system can be deactivated even with the ignition device ON.

**IMPORTANT** The system status can be changed with vehicle at a standstill only.



ABC

## Activation/deactivation

The Forward Collision Warning system is activated whenever the engine is started regardless of that shown on the Connect system.

Following a deactivation, the system will not warn the driver about the possible collision with the preceding vehicle, regardless of the setting selected with the Connect system.

**IMPORTANT** Each time the engine is started, the system is activated regardless of where was when it was previously switched off.

This function is not active at a speed lower than 4 mph (7 km/h) or higher than 125 mph (200 km/h).

The system is active when:

- ☐ each time the engine is started;
- ☐ is active (ON) on the Connect system;
- ☐ the ignition device is at ON;
- ☐ the vehicle speed is between 4 (7) and 125 mph (200 km/h);
- ☐ the front seat belts are fastened;
- ☐ the "Alfa DNA™ Pro" selector is not in RACE position (where present).

## Changing the system sensitivity

The sensitivity of the system can be changed through the Connect system menu, choosing from one of the following three options: "Near", "Med" or "Far". See

the description in the Connect system supplement for how to change the settings.

The pre-set option is "Med". With this setting, the system warns the driver of a possible collision with the vehicle in front when that vehicle is at a standard distance, between that of the other two settings.

With the system sensitivity set to "Far", the system will warn the driver of a possible collision with the vehicle in front when that vehicle is at a greater distance, thus providing the possibility of acting on the brakes more lightly and gradually.

This setting provides the drivers with the maximum possible reaction time to prevent a potential accident.

With the option set to "Near", the system will warn the driver of a possible collision with the vehicle in front when that vehicle is close. This setting offers the driver a lower reaction time compared to the "Med" and "Far" settings, in the event of a potential collision, but permits more dynamic driving of the vehicle.

The system sensitivity setting is kept in the memory when the engine is switched off.

## System limited operation signal

If the dedicated message is displayed, a condition limiting the system operation may have occurred. The possible reasons

of this limitation are something blocking the camera view or a fault.

In this condition it will still be possible to drive the car normally, but automatic braking will not be available in the event of an impending collision.

If an obstruction is signalled, clean the area of the windscreen indicated in fig. 71.

When the conditions limiting the system functions end, this will go back to normal and complete operation. Should the fault persist, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

## System failure signalling

If the system switches off and a dedicated message is shown on the display, it means that there is a fault on the system.

In this case, it is still possible to drive the vehicle, but you are advised to contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.

## Radar indication not available

If conditions are such that the radar cannot detect obstacles correctly, the system is deactivated and a dedicated message appears on the display. This generally occurs in the event of poor visibility, such as when it is snowing or raining heavily.

The system can also be temporarily

dimmed due to obstructions such as mud, dirt or ice on the bumper. In such cases, a dedicated message will be shown on the display and the system will be deactivated. This message can sometimes appear in conditions of high reflectivity (e.g. tunnels with reflective tiles or ice or snow). When the conditions limiting the system functions end, this will go back to normal and complete operation.

In certain particular cases, this dedicated message could be displayed when the radar is not detecting any vehicles or objects within its view range.

If atmospheric conditions are not the real reason behind this message, check if the sensor is dirty. It could be necessary to clean or remove any obstructions in the area shown in fig. 70.

If the message appears often, even in the absence of atmospheric conditions such as snow, rain, mud or other obstructions, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership for a sensor alignment check.

In the absence of visible obstructions, cleaning the radar surface, by manually removing the decorative cover trim, could be required. Have this operation performed at an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

**IMPORTANT** It is recommended that you do not install devices, accessories or aerodynamic attachments in front of the

sensor or darken it in any way, as this can compromise the correct functioning of the system.

### **Frontal collision alarm with active braking**

(where provided)

If this function is selected, the brakes are operated to reduce the speed of the vehicle in the event of potential frontal impact.

This function applies an additional braking pressure if the braking pressure applied by the driver does not suffice to prevent potential frontal impact.

The function is active with speed above 4 mph (7 km/h).

### **Driving in special conditions**

In certain driving conditions, such as, for example:

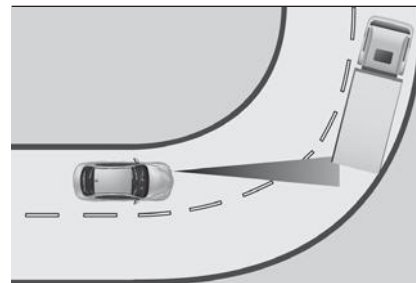
- ☐ driving close to a bend;
- ☐ the vehicle ahead is leaving a roundabout;
- ☐ vehicles with small dimensions and/or not aligned in the driving lane;
- ☐ lane change by other vehicles;
- ☐ vehicles travelling at right angles to the vehicle.

system intervention might be unexpected or delayed. The driver must therefore be very careful, keeping control of the vehicle to drive in complete safety.

**IMPORTANT** In particularly complex traffic conditions, the driver can deactivate the system manually through the Connect system.

### **Driving close to a bend**

When entering or leaving a wide bend, the system may detect a vehicle that is in front of you, but that is not driving in the same lane fig. 72. In cases such as these, the system may intervene.



72

06016S0005EM

### **The vehicle ahead is leaving a roundabout.**

On a roundabout, the system could intervene if it detects a vehicle ahead that is leaving the roundabout fig. 73.



ABC

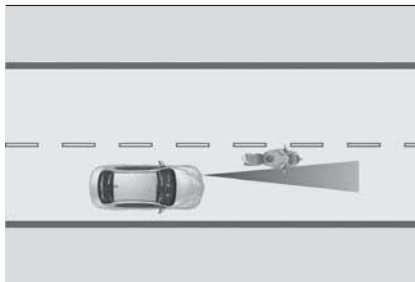


73

06016S0010EM

### Vehicles with small dimensions and/or not aligned in the driving lane

The system cannot detect vehicles in front of you that are outside the range of the radar sensor. Therefore it may not react to small vehicles, such as bicycles or motorcycles fig. 74.

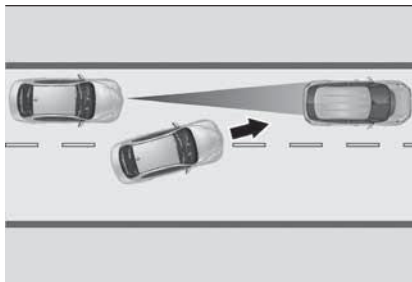


74

06016S0006EM

### Lane change by other vehicles

Vehicles suddenly changing lane, entering the same lane as your car and within the radar sensor's operating range, may cause the system to intervene fig. 75.

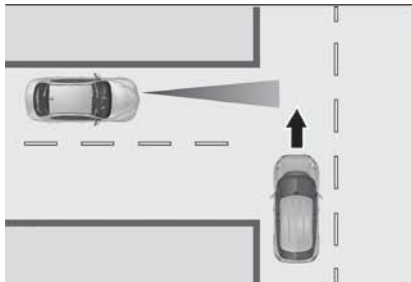


75

06016S0007EM

### Vehicles travelling at right angles to the vehicle

The system could temporarily react to a vehicle that is passing through the radar sensor's operating range at right angles fig. 76.



76

06016S0008EM

### Important notes

❑ The system has not been designed to prevent impacts and cannot detect possible conditions leading to an accident in advance. Failure to take into account this warning may lead to serious or fatal injuries.

❑ The system may activate, assessing the trajectory of the vehicle, for the presence of reflecting metal objects different from other vehicles, such as safety barriers, road signs, barriers before parking lots, tollgates, level crossings, gates, railways, objects near road constructions sites or higher than the vehicle (e.g. a flyover). In the same way, the system may intervene inside multi-storey car parks or tunnels, or due to a glare on the road surface. These possible activations are a consequence of the real driving scenario coverage by the system and must not be regarded as faults.

❑ The system has been designed for road use only. If the vehicle is driven on a track, the system must be deactivated to avoid unnecessary warnings. Automatic deactivation is signalled by the dedicated warning light/symbol switching on in the instrument panel (see the instructions in the "Warning lights and messages" paragraph, "Knowing the instrument panel" chapter).

## TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System)

62) 63) 64) 65) 66) 67) 68)

30)

The car is equipped with Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS), which can advise the driver in the event of insufficient tyre pressure on the basis of the pressure when cold indicated in the "Technical specifications" chapter.

The system comprises a radio-frequency transmitter sensor fitted to each wheel (on the rim inside the tyre), which is able to send information on the inflation pressure of each tyre to the control unit fig. 77.



77

06016S0009EM

The inflation pressure varies, depending on the temperature, of about 0.07 bar (1 psi) every 43.7°F (6.5°C). This means that a decrease of the external temperature corresponds to a decrease

of the tyre pressure. Always adjust the tyre inflation pressure when cold. This is defined as the tyre pressure after at least 3 hours of vehicle inactivity or travel of less than 1 mi (1.6 km) after the 3 hour interval.

The cold tyre inflation pressure must not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the shoulder of the tyre: for further details see the instructions in the "Rims and tyres" paragraph, in the "Technical data" chapter.

Tyre pressure increases when the vehicle is driven. This is normal, and no adjustment of the pressure is required.

The TPMS signals the driver a possible insufficient pressure if this falls below the warning limit for any reason, including the effects of low temperature and normal loss of pressure from the tyre.

The TPMS will stop indicating insufficient tyre pressure when it is equal to or greater than the prescribed cold inflation pressure. Therefore, if insufficient tyre pressure is indicated (⚠ warning light on instrument panel on), increase the inflation pressure up to the prescribed cold inflation value.

The system automatically updates and warning light (⚠) switches off each time the system receives the updated inflation pressures. The vehicle might need to be driven at a speed higher than

about 15 mph (25 km/h) up to 20 minutes for the TPMS to receive this information.

### Operating example

Supposing that the prescribed cold inflation pressure (i.e. vehicle stationary for at least 3 hours) is 2.3 bar (33.4 psi), if the ambient temperature is 68°F (20°C) and the detected tyre pressure is 1.95 bar (28.3 psi), a temperature reduction of 19.4°F (-7°C) results in a decrease in tyre pressure, bringing it to approximately 1.65 bar (23.9 psi). This pressure is sufficiently low to activate the (⚠) warning light.

Heating of tyres due to driving the vehicle may increase tyre pressure up to approximately 1.95 bar (28.3 psi), but the (⚠) warning light will stay on. In this situation, the warning light will switch off only after the tyres are inflated to the prescribed cold pressure value for the car.

**IMPORTANT** The TPMS is designed for original tyres and wheels. The prescribed pressures and consequent alarm thresholds set in the TPMS are based on the dimensions of the tyres fitted on the vehicle. Using spare wheels of a size, type and/or design different from the original ones may cause an irregular operation of the system and damage the sensors. Aftermarket fitted wheels may damage



ABC



the sensors. Using aftermarket tyre sealants may damage the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) sensor. If aftermarket tyre sealant is used it is recommended to go to an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the sensors checked. After checking or adjusting the tyre pressure, always refit the valve cap to prevent humidity and dirt from entering, these may damage the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System sensor.

### **INSUFFICIENT TYRE PRESSURE INDICATION**

If an insufficient pressure value is detected on one or more tyres, the  warning light on the instrument panel switches on and the dedicated messages are shown on the display. The system also highlights the tyre or tyres with insufficient pressure graphically. An acoustic signal is also emitted.

In this case, stop the car, check the inflation pressure of each tyre and inflate them to the correct cold inflation pressure value, shown on the display or in the dedicated TPMS menu.

### **TPMS TEMPORARILY DISABLED**

#### **TPMS check message**

If a system failure is present, the  warning light flashes for about 75 seconds and then stays on solid. An acoustic signal is also emitted.

A dedicated message and dashes "--" instead of the pressure value are shown on the display, to indicate that detection is impossible.

When the ignition device is set to STOP and then back to ON, the indication sequence repeats provided that the failure is still resent.

The  warning light switches off when the failure condition disappears and the pressure value is displayed again in place of the dashes.

A fault in the system could occur in the following cases:

-  strong radio-frequency noises could hinder the regular operation of the TPMS. This condition will be indicated by a dedicated message on the display. The message will disappear automatically as soon as the radio-frequency interference ceases to affect the system;
-  aftermarket application of coloured films on the windows that interfere with the radio waves emitted by the TPMS;
-  accumulation of layers of snow or ice on the wheels or the wheel arches;
-  using snow chains;
-  use of rim/tyre assemblies without sensors for TPMS;

After the punctured tyre has been repaired with the original tyre sealant contained in the TireKit, the previous

condition must be restored, so that the  warning light is off during normal driving.

### **TPMS deactivation**

The TPMS can be deactivated by replacing the wheels equipped with TPMS with others that are not (e.g. upon replacement of the wheel assemblies in winter) and if compatible with the country of purchase that makes this possibility available. Then drive for at least 20 minutes at a speed higher than about 15 mph (25 km/h).

The TPMS will emit an acoustic warning, the  warning light will flash for about 75 seconds, then will stay on constantly and the instrument panel will display the "TPMS check" message with some dashes "--" instead of the pressure values.

From the following ignition cycle, the TPMS will not emit any acoustic signal and the display will not show the message "TPMS check", but the dashes will be still displayed instead of the pressure value.





## WARNING

**56)** The system is an aid for vehicle driving, it DOES NOT warn the driver about incoming vehicles outside of the detection areas. The driver must always maintain a sufficient level of attention to the traffic and road conditions and for controlling the trajectory of the vehicle.

**57)** The Forward Collision Warning (FCW) system is automatically deactivated when RACE mode is selected.

**58)** The system is an aid for the driver, who must always pay full attention while driving. The responsibility always rests with the driver, who must take into account the traffic conditions in order to drive in complete safety. The driver must always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front.

**59)** If the driver depresses the brake pedal fully or carries out a fast steering during system operation, the automatic braking function may stop (e.g. to allow a possible manoeuvre to avoid the obstacle).

**60)** The system intervenes on vehicles travelling in the same lane. People, animals and things (e.g. pushchairs) are not taken into consideration.

**61)** If the car must be placed on a roller bench for maintenance interventions or if it is washed in an automatic roller washing tunnel with an obstacle in the front part (e.g. another car, a wall or another obstacle), the system may detect its presence and activate. In this case the system must be deactivated through the settings of the Connect system.

**62)** The presence of the TPMS does not permit the driver to neglect regular checks of the tyre pressure, including for the spare tyre, and correct maintenance: the system is not used to signalling a possible tyre fault.

**63)** Tyre pressure must be checked with tyres rested and cold. Should it become necessary for whatever reason to check pressure with warm tyres, do not reduce pressure even though it is higher than the prescribed value. Repeat the check when the tyres are cold.

**64)** Should one or more wheels be fitted without sensors, the system will no longer be available and a warning message will be shown on the display, until wheels with sensors are fitted again.

**65)** The TPMS cannot indicate sudden tyre pressure drops (e.g. if a tyre bursts). In this case, stop the vehicle, braking with caution and avoiding abrupt steering.

**66)** Changes in outside temperature may cause tyre pressures to vary. The system may temporarily indicate insufficient pressure. In this case, check the tyre pressure when cold and, if necessary, restore the inflation values.

**67)** Replacing standard tyres with winter tyres and vice versa requires TPMS system adjustment that must only be performed by Alfa Romeo Dealerships.

**68)** When a tyre is removed, it is advisable to replace the rubber valve seal as well: contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership. The fitting/removal of the tyres and/or rims require special care. To avoid damaging or fitting the sensors incorrectly, tyre and/or rim fitting/removal operations should only be carried out by specialised staff. Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.



## IMPORTANT

**21)** The system may have limited or absent operation due to weather conditions such as: heavy rain, hail, thick fog, heavy snow.

**22)** The section of the bumper before the sensor must not be covered with adhesives, auxiliary headlights or any other object.

**23)** System intervention might be unexpected or delayed when other vehicles transport loads projecting from the side, above or from the rear, with respect to the normal size of the vehicle.

**24)** Operation can be adversely affected by any structural change made to the vehicle, such as a modification to the front geometry, tyre change, or a heavier load than the standard load of the vehicle.

**25)** Incorrect repairs made on the front part of the vehicle (e.g. bumper, chassis) may alter the position of the radar sensor, and adversely affect its operation. Go to an Alfa Romeo Dealership for any operation of this type.

**26)** Do not tamper with nor carry out any intervention on the radar sensor or on the camera on the windscreen. In the event of a sensor failure, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

**27)** Do not wash with high-pressure jets in the bumper lower area: in particular do not operate on the system's electrical connector.



ABC

**28)** Be careful in the case of repairs and new paintings in the area around the sensor (panel covering the sensor on the left side of the bumper). In the event of a frontal impact the sensor may automatically deactivate and display a warning to indicate that the sensor needs to be repaired. Even without a malfunction warning, deactivate the system operation if you think that the position of the radar sensor has changed (e.g. due to low-speed frontal impact as during parking manoeuvres). In these cases, go to an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the radar sensor realigned or replaced.

**29)** When towing a trailer, a vehicle or during loading manoeuvres on a vehicle transporter (or in vehicle for transport), the system must be deactivated via the Connect system.

**30)** The Tire Repair Kit, provided with the vehicle, is compatible with the TPMS sensors. Using sealants different from that in the original kit may compromise its operation. If sealants not equivalent with the original ones are used, it is recommended to have the TPMS sensor operation checked by a qualified repair centre.

## OCCUPANT PROTECTION SYSTEMS

Some of the most important safety equipment of the vehicle comprise the following protection systems:

- ☐ seat belts;
- ☐ SBA (Seat Belt Alert) System;
- ☐ head restraints;
- ☐ child restraint systems;
- ☐ Front airbags and side bags.

Read the information given the following pages with the utmost care. It is of fundamental importance that the protection systems are used in the correct way to guarantee the maximum possible safety level for the driver and the passengers.

For the description of the head restraint adjustment see the "Head restraints" paragraph in the "Knowing your vehicle" chapter.

## SEAT BELTS

All the seatbelts have three anchoring points each with its own retractor.

The retractor mechanism operates locking the belt in the event of sharp braking or strong deceleration due to an impact. This allows the belt strap to slide freely and to adapt to the body of the occupant. In the event of an accident, the belt will lock reducing the risk of impact inside the passenger compartment and of being projected outside the vehicle.

The driver is responsible for respecting, and ensuring that all the other occupants of the vehicle also respect, the local laws in force in relation to the use of the seat belts.

Always fasten the seat belts before setting off.

### USING THE SEAT BELTS

The seat belt should be worn keeping the chest straight and rested against the backrest.

To fasten the seat belts, hold the tongue 1 fig. 78 and insert it into the buckle 2, until it clicks into place.



78

06056S0001EM

On removal of the belt, if it jams, let it rewind for a short stretch, then pull it out again without jerking.

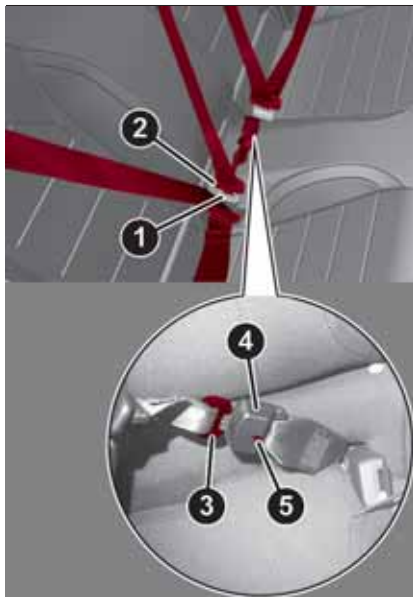
To unfasten the seat belts, press button 3 and guide the seat belt with your hand while it is rewinding, to prevent it from twisting.



69)

The retractor may lock when the vehicle is parked on a steep slope: this is perfectly normal. Furthermore, the reel mechanism locks the belt if it is pulled sharply or in the event of sudden braking, collisions and high-speed bends.

Wear the rear seat belts as shown in fig. 79 and fig. 80.

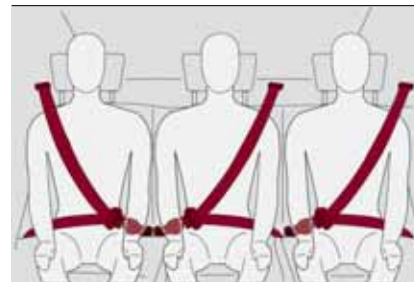


79

06056S0002EM

Unlike the side seat belts, the central rear one has a double buckle. Unwind the belt, grasp the fastening tongue 3 fig. 79 and introduce it into its housing 4, then insert tongue 2 in housing 1; make sure that both belts are fastened correctly.

To release tongue 3 press button 5, using either belt fastening tongue.



80

06056S0003EM



70)



## WARNING

**69)** Never press button 3 when travelling.  
**70)** Remember that, in the event of an accident, the rear seat passengers not wearing seat belts are exposed to a very serious risk and also represent a serious danger for the front seat occupants.



ABC

## SBA (Seat Belt Alert) SYSTEM

The SBA system warns the passengers of the front and rear (where provided) seats if their seat belt is not fastened.

The system signals unfastened seat belts with visual warnings (warning lights on in the instrument panel and icons on the display) and an acoustic signal (see the following paragraphs).

**NOTE** Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership to deactivate the acoustic warning. The acoustic warning can be reactivated at any time through the Connect system.

### FRONT SEAT BELT WARNING LIGHT BEHAVIOUR

When the ignition key is turned to ON, the warning light  (see fig. 81) lights up for a few seconds, regardless of the status of the front seat belts.

With vehicle at a standstill, if the driver side seat belt or the passenger side seat belt (with occupant seated) is unfastened, the warning light stays on constantly.



81

0606650001EM

As soon as the threshold of 5 mph (8 km/h) is exceeded for a few seconds (variable according to the vehicle conditions) with driver or passenger side (with passenger seated) seat belts unfastened, an acoustic warning is activated together with the flashing of the  warning light for approximately 105 seconds.

When this cycle of warnings is activated it will stay on for its entire length (regardless of the vehicle speed) or until the seat belts are fastened again.

When the reverse is engaged, during the cycle of warnings, the acoustic signal is deactivated and the  warning light turns on constantly. The cycle of warnings will be reactivated as soon as speed exceeds 5 mph (8 km/h) again.

## REAR SEAT BELT ICON BEHAVIOUR

(where provided)

The icons are shown on the display (fig. 82) after a few seconds have elapsed since the ignition device is turned to ON and disappear after approximately 30 seconds.

After a door closes, or following a change in belt fastening status, the icons are shown again for approximately 30 seconds before disappearing.

The icons shown on the display indicate:

- 1 - rear left *seat belt*;
- 2 - rear central *seat belt*, (where provided);
- 3 - rear right *seat belt*.



82

0606650002EM

The icons are displayed according to the corresponding seat belts in the rear seats, and stay on for about 30 seconds from the last seat belt status change:

- ❑ *if the seat belt is fastened* the corresponding icon will be green;
- ❑ *if the seat belt is unfastened* the corresponding icon will be red.

If a rear seat belt is unfastened, an acoustic warning (3 "beeps") will be activated along with the relevant icon lighting up in the display.

Furthermore the icons will light up again for 30 seconds each time one of the rear doors is closed.

The visual indication (flashing red) will start and stop independently for each warning light if several seat belts are unfastened.

The icon will turn green after the corresponding seat belt has been fastened.

The rear seat icons will go out, regardless of the state of the belt (red icon or green icon), approximately 30 seconds after the last signal.

### IMPORTANT NOTES

As far as the rear seats are concerned, the SBR system will only indicate whether the seat belts are unfastened (red icon) or fastened (green icon), not the presence of any passengers.

The warning lights/icons all stay off if all seat belts (front and rear) are fastened when the ignition device is set to ON.

For the rear seats, the icons will activate a few seconds after the ignition device has been turned to ON, regardless of the status of the seat belts (even if the seat belts are all fastened).

All the warning lights/icons will come on when at least one belt changes from fastened to unfastened status or vice versa.

## PRETENSIONERS

The vehicle is equipped with front and rear lateral seat belt pretensioners, which draw back the seat belts by several centimetres in the event of a strong frontal impact. This guarantees the perfect adherence of the seat belts to the occupant's bodies before the retention action begins.

It is evident that the pretensioners have been activated when the belt withdraws toward the retractor.

This car is also equipped with a second pretensioner on the front seat belts (fitted in the kick plate area). Its activation is signalled by the shortening of the metal cable.

A slight discharge of smoke may be produced during the activation of the pretensioner which is not harmful and does not involve any fire hazard. The pretensioner does not require any maintenance or lubrication: any changes to its original conditions will invalidate its efficiency.

If, due to unusual natural events (floods, sea storms, etc.), the device has been affected by water and/or mud, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have it replaced.

**IMPORTANT** To obtain the highest degree of protection from the action of the pretensioner, wear the seat belt tight to the torso and pelvis.



ABC

## LOAD LIMITERS



71)



31)

To increase safety in the event of an accident, the front and rear lateral seat belt retractors contain a load limiter which controls the force acting on the chest and shoulders during the belt restraining action in the event of a head-on collision.

## GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS FOR USING THE SEAT BELTS



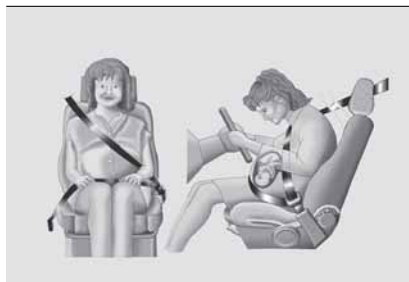
72) 73) 74)

Respect and ensure that all the other occupants of the vehicle comply with the local laws in force regarding the use of seat belts. Always fasten the seat belts before setting off.

Seat belts must also be worn by pregnant women: the risk of injury in the event of an accident is reduced for them and the unborn child if they are wearing a seat belt.

Pregnant women must position the lower part of the belt very low down so that it passes over the pelvis and under the abdomen fig. 83. While pregnancy progresses, the driver must adjust both seat and steering wheel to have full control over the vehicle (pedals and steering wheel must be easy to access). The maximum clearance should be kept

between the abdomen and the steering wheel.



83

0607650001EM

The seat belt must not be twisted. The upper part must pass over the shoulder and cross the chest diagonally. The lower part must adhere to the pelvis fig. 84, not to the abdomen of the occupant. Never use devices (clips, clamps, etc.) that hold the seat belt away from your body.



84

0607650002EM

Each seat belt must be used by only one person. Never travel with a child sitting

on the passenger's lap and a single belt to protect them both fig. 85. In general, do not place any objects between the person and the belt.



85

0607650003EM

## SEAT BELTS MAINTENANCE

For keeping the seat belts in efficient conditions, carefully observe the following warnings:

- ☐ always use the seat belt well stretched and never twisted; make sure that it is free to run without obstructions;
- ☐ check seat belt operation as follows: attach the seat belt and pull it hard;
- ☐ replace the belt after an accident of a certain severity even if it does not appear to be damaged. Always replace the seat belt if the pretensioners were deployed;
- ☐ prevent the retractors from getting wet: their correct operation is only guaranteed if water does not get inside;
- ☐ replace the seat belt when it shows wear or cuts.



## WARNING

**71)** The pretensioner may be used only once. After its activation, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have it replaced.

**72)** Removing or otherwise tampering with pretensioner and seat belt components is strictly prohibited. Any intervention on these components must be performed by qualified and authorised technicians. Always contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

**73)** For maximum safety, keep the backrest upright, lean back into it and make sure the seat belt fits closely across your chest and pelvis. Always fasten the seat belts for both the front and rear seats! Travelling without wearing seat belts will increase the risk of serious injury and even death in the event of an accident.

**74)** If the belt has been subjected to high levels of stress, for example after an accident, it should be changed completely together with the attachments, attachment fixing screws and the pretensioner. In fact, even if the belt has no visible defects, it may have lost its resilience.



## IMPORTANT

**31)** Operations which lead to impacts, vibrations or localised heating (over 100°C for a maximum of six hours) in the area around the pretensioner may cause damage or make it deploy. Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership should intervention be necessary on these components.

## CHILD PROTECTION SYSTEMS

### CARRYING CHILDREN SAFELY



75) 76) 77) 78)

For optimal protection in the event of an impact, all occupants must be seated and wearing adequate restraint systems, including newborn and other children!

This prescription is compulsory in all EC countries according to EC Directive 2003/20/EC.

Children below the height of 60 in (1.50 m) and up to 12 years must be protected with suitable restraint systems and be seated on the rear seats.

Statistics on accidents indicate that the rear seats offer greater safety for children.

Compared with an adult, a child's head is larger and heavier in proportion to their body and the child's muscular and bone structures are not fully developed.

Therefore, correct restraint systems other than adult seat belts are necessary, to reduce as much as possible the risk of injuries in the event of an accident, braking or sudden manoeuvre.

Children must be seated safely and comfortably. Depending on the characteristics of the child restraint systems used, you are advised to keep children in rearward facing child restraint systems for as long as possible (at least

until 3-4 years old), since this is the most protected position in the event of an impact.

The choice of the most suitable child restraint system depends on the weight and size of the child. There are various types of child restraint systems, which can be secured to the vehicle by means of the seat belts or with the ISOFIX/i-Size anchorages.

It is recommended to always choose the restraint system most suitable for the child; for this reason always refer to the Owner Handbook provided with the child restraint system, to be sure that it is of the right type for the children it is intended for.



ABC



In Europe the characteristics of child restraint systems are ruled by the regulation ECE-R44, dividing them into five weight groups:

| Group    | Weight groups                    |
|----------|----------------------------------|
| Group 0  | up to 22 lb (10 kg)<br>in weight |
| Group 0+ | up to 29 lb (13 kg)<br>in weight |
| Group 1  | 22-40 lb (9-18 kg)               |
| Group 2  | 33-55 lb (15-25 kg)              |
| Group 3  | 48-80 lb (22-36 kg)              |

The ECE-R44 standard was recently paired with the ECE R-129 regulation, which defines the characteristics of the new i-Size child restraint systems (see the "Suitability of passenger seats for i-Size child restraint system use" paragraph for more information).

All restraint devices must bear the certification data, together with the control mark, on a label solidly fixed to the child restraint system which must never be removed.

Lineaccessori includes child restraint systems for each weight group. These devices are recommended having been specifically tested for Alfa Romeo cars.

## FITTING A CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM WITH SEAT BELTS

The Universal child restraint systems installed with the seat belts only are type-approved on the basis of the ECE R44 standard and are divided into various weight groups.



**IMPORTANT** The figures are indicative and provided for assembly purposes only. Fit the child restraint system according to the instructions, which must be included.

### Group 0 and 0+

Babies weighing up to 29 lb (13 kg) must be carried with a rear facing child restraint system of a type as shown in fig. 86 which, supporting the head, does not induce stress on the neck in the event of sudden decelerations.



86

0608650001EM

The child restraint system is secured by the vehicle seat belts, as shown in fig. 86 and it must restrain the child in turn with its own belts.

### Group 1

Children weighing 20 (9) to 40 lb (18 kg) can be transported in forward facing child restraint systems fig. 87.



87

0608650002EM



## Group 2

Children weighing 33 (15) to 55 lb (25 kg) may be restrained directly by the car seat belts fig. 88.



88

0608650003EM

In this case, the child restraint system is used to position the child correctly with respect to the seat belts so that the diagonal belt section crosses the child's chest and not the neck, and the lower part is snug on the pelvis not the abdomen.

## Group 3

For children weighing 48 (22) to 80 lb (36 kg), there are dedicated restraint systems that allow the seat belt to be worn correctly.

The fig. 89 shows correct child positioning on the rear seat.



89

0608650004EM

Children over 60 in (1.50 m) tall can wear seat belts like adults.



ABC

## PASSENGER SEAT COMPLIANCE WITH REGULATIONS ON UNIVERSAL CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM USE

According to the European Directive 2000/3/EC the suitability of each passenger seat position for the fixing of universal child restraint systems is shown in the following table:

| Positioning the "Universal" child restraint system |                     |                      |                       |                                         |                      |
|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------|----------------------|
| Group                                              | Weight groups       | Front passenger      |                       | Rear passengers                         |                      |
|                                                    |                     | Passenger airbags on | Passenger airbags off | Rear central passenger (where provided) | Rear side passengers |
| Group 0                                            | up to 22 lb (10 kg) | X                    | U                     | X                                       | U                    |
| Group 0+                                           | up to 29 lb (13 kg) | X                    | U                     | X                                       | U                    |
| Group 1                                            | 20-40 lb (9-18 kg)  | X                    | U                     | X                                       | U                    |
| Group 2                                            | 33-55 lb (15-25 kg) | U                    | U                     | X                                       | U                    |
| Group 3                                            | 48-80 lb (22-36 kg) | U                    | U                     | X                                       | U                    |

X = Seat not suitable for children in this weight category.

U = suitable for child restraint systems of the "Universal" category, according to European Standard EEC-R44 for the specified "Groups".

## INSTALLING AN ISOFIX CHILD CARSEAT

 83) 84) 85) 86) 87)

The rear side seats of the vehicle are equipped with ISOFIX attachments, for fitting child restraint systems quickly, simply and safely.

The ISOFIX system lets you install the ISOFIX child restraining system without using the car seat belts but connecting them directly to the carseat with three anchors in the car.

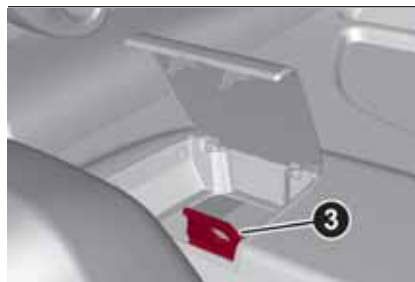
Traditional child restraint systems can be fitted alongside ISOFIX child restraint systems on different seats in the same vehicle.

To install an ISOFIX child restraint system, attach it to the two metal anchors 1 fig. 90 which can be reached lifting the doors 2 located behind the cushion of the rear seat, in the point where it meets the backrest, then fix the upper hook (available with the child restraint system) to the dedicated anchor "top tether" 3 fig. 91 located behind the seat headrest.



90

0608650009EM



91

0608650005EM

As an example, fig. 92 shows an example of a Universal ISOFIX child restraint system for weight group 1.

**IMPORTANT** The fig. 92 is indicative and for assembly purposes only. Fit the child restraint system according to the instructions, which must be included.



92

0608650006EM

**NOTE** When a Universal ISOFIX child restraint system is used, only ECE R44 "ISOFIX Universal" (R44/03 or further upgrades) type-approved child restraint systems can be used (see fig. 93).

The other weight groups are covered by specific ISOFIX child restraint systems, which can be used only if specifically tested for this vehicle (see list of vehicles provided with the child restraint system).



93

0608650007EM



ABC

**SUITABILITY OF PASSENGER SEATS FOR ISOFIX CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM USE**

| ISOFIX POSITIONS ON THE VEHICLE            |               |         |                 |                      |                                         |
|--------------------------------------------|---------------|---------|-----------------|----------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Weight categories                          | Size category | Device  | Front passenger | Rear side passengers | Rear central passenger (where provided) |
| Group 0 (up to 22 lb (10 kg))              | E             | ISO/R1  | X               | IL                   | X                                       |
| Group 0+ (up to 29 lb (13 kg))             | E             | ISO/R1  | X               | IL                   | X                                       |
|                                            | D             | ISO/R2  | X               | IL                   | X                                       |
|                                            | C             | ISO/R3  | X               | IL (*)               | X                                       |
| Group 1 (from 20 (9) up to 40 lb (18 kg))  | D             | ISO/R2  | X               | IL                   | X                                       |
|                                            | C             | ISO/R3  | X               | IL (*)               | X                                       |
|                                            | B             | ISO/F2  | X               | IUF -IL              | X                                       |
|                                            | B1            | ISO/F2X | X               | IUF -IL              | X                                       |
|                                            | A             | ISO/F3  | X               | IUF -IL              | X                                       |
|                                            |               |         |                 |                      |                                         |
| Group 2 (from 33 (15) up to 55 lb (25 kg)) |               |         | X               | IL                   | X                                       |
| Group 3 (from 48 (22) up to 80 lb (36 kg)) |               |         | X               | IL                   | X                                       |

X ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child protection systems for this weight and/or size category.

IL Suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems of the "Specific for the vehicle", "Restricted", or "Semiuniversal" categories, approved for this type of vehicle.

IL (\*) It is possible to install the ISOFIX child restraint system by adjusting the front seat (adjustment is not required if the "Sparco" Carbonshell Sport seats are installed).

IUF Suitable for forward facing ISOFIX child restraint systems in the Universal category and type-approved for the use in the weight group.

X ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child protection systems for this weight and/or size category.

## SUITABILITY OF PASSENGER SEATS FOR i-Size CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM USE

The rear side seats of the vehicle are type-approved to house the state-of-the-art i-Size child restraint systems.

These child restraint systems, built and type-approved according to the i-Size (ECE R129) standard, ensure better safety conditions to carry children on board a vehicle:

- ☐ the child must be transported rearward facing until 15 months;
- ☐ child restraint system protection is increased in the event of a side collision;
- ☐ the use of the ISOFIX system is promoted to avoid faulty installation of the child restraint system;
- ☐ efficiency in the choice of the child restraint system, which isn't made according to weight anymore but according to the child's height, is increased;
- ☐ compatibility between the vehicle seats and the child restraint systems is better: the i-Size child restraint systems can be considered as "Super ISOFIX"; this means that they can be perfectly fitted in type-approved i-Size seats, but can also be fitted in ISOFIX (ECE R44) type-approved seats.

NOTE The vehicle seats, i-Size type-approved, are marked by the symbol shown in fig. 94.



94

0608650008EM



ABC

The following table, according to European standard ECE 129, indicates the possibility of i-Size child restraint system installation.

|                                | i-Size POSITIONS ON THE VEHICLE |                 |                      |                        |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------|------------------------|
|                                | Device                          | Front passenger | Rear side passengers | Rear central passenger |
| i-Size child restraint systems | ISO/R2                          | X               | i-U                  | X                      |
|                                | ISO/F2                          | X               | i-U                  | X                      |

i-U: suitable for Universal i-Size child restraint systems, both rearward facing and forward facing.

X: seat not suitable for Universal i-Size child restraint systems.

## CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEMS RECOMMENDED BY ALFA ROMEO FOR YOUR GIULIA

Lineaccessori Alfa Romeo includes a complete range of child restraint systems to be fixed using the seat belt with three anchorage points or the ISOFIX anchorages.

IMPORTANT Alfa Romeo recommends fitting the child restraint system according to the instructions, which must be included.

| Weight group                                                           | Child restraint system                                                            | Type of child restraint system     | Child restraint system installation                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Group 0+: from birth to 29 lb (13 kg)<br>from 16 (40) to 34 in (85 cm) |  | <b>PEG-PEREGO Primo Viaggio SL</b> | Universal/ISOFIX child restraint system.<br>It must be installed rearward facing, using the vehicle seat belts only, or the dedicated ISOFIX K base (which can be purchased separately) and the vehicle ISOFIX anchorages. |
|                                                                        |  | <b>ISOFIX Basic 0+1 K</b>          | <b>Alfa Romeo recommends using the specific ISOFIX K base (which can be purchased separately) and the ISOFIX anchorages of the vehicle to install it.</b><br>With the base it must be fitted on the rear outer seats.      |



ABC

| Weight group                                                               | Child restraint system                                                             | Type of child restraint system                                                                     | Child restraint system installation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Group 1: from 20 (9) up to 40 lb (18 kg)<br>from 26 (67) to 41 in (105 cm) |   | <b>Fair G0/1S</b>                                                                                  | Universal/ISOFIX child restraint system.<br>It can be fitted using the vehicle seat belts (forward facing only) or using the ISOFIX anchorages of the vehicle.<br><b>Alfa Romeo recommends fitting it using the rear facing ISOFIX platform (A RWF type - to be purchased separately) or the forward facing ISOFIX platform (M - FWF type - to be purchased separately), the rigid head restraint (to be purchased separately) and the ISOFIX anchorages for the vehicle.</b><br>With the base it must be fitted on the rear outer seats. |
|                                                                            |   | <b>Reference 1: Fair ISOFIX RWF platform</b><br>or<br><b>Reference 2: Fair ISOFIX FWF platform</b> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Group 2: from 33 (15) to 55 lb (25 kg)<br>from 37 (95) to 53 in (135 cm)   |  | <b>TAKATA MAXI PLUS</b>                                                                            | It can only be fitted facing forwards, using the three-point seat belt and the ISOFIX anchorages of the vehicle.<br><b>Alfa Romeo recommends to install it using the ISOFIX anchorages of the vehicle.</b><br>It must be fitted on the rear outer seats.<br><b>Alfa Romeo recommends to use the backrest at all times for children up to 53 in (135 cm) tall.</b>                                                                                                                                                                         |



| Weight group                                                           | Child restraint system                                                            | Type of child restraint system | Child restraint system installation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Group 3: from 48 (22) to 80 lb (36 kg) from 53 (136) to 60 in (150 cm) |  | <b>TAKATA MAXI PLUS</b>        | <p>It can only be fitted facing forwards, using the three-point seat belt and the ISOFIX anchorages of the vehicle.</p> <p><b>Alfa Romeo recommends to install it using the ISOFIX anchorages of the vehicle.</b></p> <p>It must be fitted on the rear outer seats.</p> |



ABC

## Main recommendations to carry children safely

- ❑ Install the child restraint systems on the rear seat, which is the most protected position in the event of an impact.
- ❑ Keep children in rearward facing child restraint systems for as long as possible, until 3–4 years old if possible.
- ❑ If a rear facing child restraint system is installed on the front seat, passenger's side, it is recommended to remove the head restraint (refer to the procedure described in "Head restraint" paragraph, "Knowing your vehicle" chapter). The head restraint must be repositioned properly if no child restraint system is to be transported.
- ❑ If the passenger's front airbag is deactivated always check the warning light on the front dashboard to make sure that it has actually been deactivated.
- ❑ Carefully follow the instructions supplied with the child restraint system. Keep the instructions in the vehicle along with the other documents and this handbook. Do not use second-hand child restraint systems without instructions.
- ❑ Only one child is to be strapped into each restraint system; never carry two children using one child restraint system.
- ❑ Always check that the seat belts do not rest on the child's neck.
- ❑ Always check that the seat belt is well fastened by pulling on it.

- ❑ While travelling, do not let the child sit incorrectly or unfasten the belts.
- ❑ Never allow a child to put the belt's diagonal section under an arm or behind their back.
- ❑ Never carry children on your lap, even newborns. No one can hold a child in the case of an accident.
- ❑ In the event of an accident, replace the child restraint system with a new one.



### WARNING

**75) SEVERE DANGER** When a front passenger airbag is fitted, do not install rearward facing child restraint systems on the front passenger seat. Deployment of the airbag in an accident could cause fatal injuries to the child regardless of the severity of the collision. It is advisable to always carry children in a child restraint system on the rear seat, which is the most protected position in the event of a collision.

**76)** On the sun visor there is a label with suitable symbols reminding the user that it is compulsory to deactivate the airbag if a rearward facing child restraint system is fitted. Always comply with the instructions on the passenger side sun visor (see the "Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) - Airbag" paragraph).

**77)** Should it be necessary to carry a child on the passenger side front seat in a rear facing child restraint system, the passenger side front airbag and side bag must be deactivated through the Connect system main menu (see the Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) - Airbag" paragraph), verifying deactivation by checking whether the  **OFF** LED has illuminated on the front ceiling light. Move the passenger's seat as far back as possible to avoid contact between the child seat and the dashboard.

**78)** Do not move the front or rear seat if a child is seated on it or on the dedicated child restraint system

**79)** Incorrect fitting of the child restraint system may result in an inefficient protection system. In the event of an accident the child restraint system may become loose and the child may be injured, even fatally. When fitting a restraint system for newborns or children, strictly comply with the instructions provided by the Manufacturer.

**80)** When the child restraint system is not used, secure it with the seat belt or with the ISOFIX anchorages, or remove it from the vehicle. Do not leave it unsecured inside the passenger compartment. In this way, in the case of sudden braking or an accident, it will not cause injuries to the occupants.

**81)** After installing a child restraint system, do not move the seat: always remove the child restraint system before making any adjustment.

**82)** Always make sure that the chest section of the seat belt does not pass under the arms or behind the back of the child. In the event of an accident the seat belt will not be able to secure the child, with the risk of injury, including fatal injury. Therefore the child must always wear the seat belt correctly.

**83)** Do not use the same lower anchorage to install more than one child restraint system.

**84)** If a Universal ISOFIX child seat is not fixed to all three anchorages, the child seat will not be able to protect the child correctly. In a crash, the child could be seriously or fatally injured.

**85)** Fit the child restraint system when the car is stationary. The child restraint system is correctly fixed to the brackets when you hear the click. Follow the instructions for assembly, disassembly and positioning that the Manufacturer must supply with the child restraint system.

**86)** If the vehicle was involved in an accident of a certain severity, have the ISOFIX anchorages and the child restraint system replaced.

**87)** If the vehicle was involved in an accident of a certain severity, have both the child restraint system and the seat belt it was attached to replaced.

## SUPPLEMENTARY RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS) - AIRBAG

The vehicle is equipped with:

- ☐ front driver airbag;
- ☐ front passenger airbag;
- ☐ driver and passenger front side bags for pelvis, chest and shoulder protection (Side bags);
- ☐ side bags for head protection of front seat passengers and rear side seat passengers (window bag).

The location of the airbags on the vehicle is marked by the word "AIRBAG" in the middle of the steering wheel below the Alfa Romeo emblem, on the dashboard, on the side trim or on a label placed next to the airbag deployment area.

### FRONT AIRBAGS

The front (driver and passenger) airbags protect the front seat occupants in the event of head-on crashes of medium-high severity, by placing the cushion between the occupant and the steering wheel or dashboard.

Therefore non-activation of airbags in other types of collisions (side impacts, rear shunts, roll-overs, etc.) does not indicate a system malfunction.

Driver and passenger front airbags are not a replacement of but complementary to the seat belts, which should always be worn, as specified by law in Europe and most non-European countries.

In the event of impact, those not wearing

a seat belt are projected forwards and may come into contact with the bag which is still inflating. The protection offered by the bag is compromised in these circumstances.

Front airbags may not activate in the following situations:

- ☐ frontal impacts against highly deformable objects not involving the front surface of the vehicle (e.g. wing collision against guard rail, etc.);
- ☐ vehicle wedging under other vehicles or protective barriers (e.g. trucks or guard rails).

Failure to activate in the conditions described above is due to the fact that they may not provide any additional protection compared with seat belts, so their activation would be inappropriate. In these cases, non-deployment does not indicate a system malfunction.

### Driver's side front airbag

This consists of an instantly inflating bag contained in a special compartment in the centre of the steering wheel fig. 95.



ABC



95

06106S0001EM

### Passenger side front airbag

This consists of an instantly inflating bag contained in a special recess in the dashboard fig. 96; this bag has a larger volume than that of the driver's.



96

06106S0002EM

### Passenger side front airbag and child restraint systems

Rearward facing child restraint systems must **NEVER** be fitted on the front seat with an active passenger side airbag since in the event of an impact the airbag activation may cause fatal injuries to the transported child.

**ALWAYS** comply with the instructions on the label stuck on the passenger side sun visor fig. 97, and shown in table fig. 100.



97

06106S0003EM

### Deactivating/activating the passenger airbags: front airbag and side bag

(where provided)

For deactivating the passenger front and side airbags, on the Connect system, select the following functions in sequence from the main menu, which can be opened by pressing the MENU button: "Settings", "Safety", "Passenger airbag" which can be selected by turning and pressing the Rotary Pad fig. 98. The system will detect the activation/deactivation state of the airbags and confirm change of state. Press the Rotary Pad to continue.



98

06106S0007EM

The OFF and ON state LEDs are provided on the front ceiling light. Moving the ignition device to AVV, the two LEDs switch on for a few seconds. If not, contact a Alfa Romeo Dealership. During the first seconds, the activation of the LEDs does not actually show the

passenger protection status, but only checks its correct operation.

After a test of a few seconds, the LEDs will indicate the status of the passenger airbag protection.

Passenger protection activated: the LED ON fig. 99 switches on.

Passenger protection deactivated: the OFF LED switches on with a steady light.



99

0610650008EM



ABC

## Passenger side front airbag and child restraint systems IMPORTANT

|     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I   | RISCHIO DI FERITE GRAVI O MORTALI. I seggiolini bambino che si montano nel verso opposto a quello di marcia non vanno installati sui sedili anteriori in presenza di air bag passeggero attivo.                                  |
| GB  | DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY CAN OCCUR.<br>NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur                                         |
| F   | RISQUE DE MORT OU DE BLESSURES GRAVES. NE PAS positionner le siège pour enfant tourné vers l'arrière, en cas d'air bag passager actif.                                                                                           |
| D   | Nichtbeachtung kann TOD oder SCHWERE VERLETZUNGEN zur Folge haben.<br>Rückwärts gerichtete Kinderrückhaltesysteme (Babyschale) dürfen nicht in Verbindung mit aktiviertem Beifahrerairbag auf dem Beifahrersitz verwendet werden |
| NL  | DIT KAN DODELIJK ZIJN OF ERNSTIGE ONGELUKKEN VERDOORZAKEN. Plaats het kinderstoeltje niet ruggelings op de voorstoel wanneer er een airbag aanwezig is.                                                                          |
| E   | PUEDE OCACIONAR MUERTE O HERIDAS GRAVES. NO ubicar el asiento para niños en sentido inverso al de marcha en el asiento delantero si hubiese airbag activo lado pasajero.                                                         |
| PL  | MOŻE GROZIĆ ŚMIERCIĄ LUB CIEŻKIMI OBRAŻENIAMI.<br>NIE WOLNO umieszczać fotelika dziecięcego tyłem do kierunku jazdy na przednim siedzeniu w przypadku zainstalowanej aktywnej poduszki powietrznej pasażera.                     |
| TR  | ÖLÜM VEYA AĞIR ŞEKİLDE YARALANMAYA SEBEP OLABİLİR. Yolcu airbağı aktif halde iken çocuk koltuğunu araç gidiş yönüne ters biçimde yerleştirmeyin.                                                                                 |
| DK  | FARE FOR DØDELIGE KVÆSTELSER OG LIVSTRUENDE SKADER. Placer aldrig en bagudvendt barnstol på passagerersædet, hvis passager-airbagen er indstillet til at være aktiv (on).                                                        |
| EST | TAGAJÄRJESKES VÕIVAD OLLA TÕSISED KEHAVIGASTUSED VÕI SURM. Turvapäida olemasolu korral ärge asetage lapse turvalist sõiduasunaga vastasuunas.                                                                                    |
| FIN | KUOLEMANVAARA TAI VAKAVIEN VAMMOJEN UHKA. Älä aseta lasten turvaistuinta niin, että lapsi on selkää menosuuntaan, kun matkustajan airbag on käytössä.                                                                            |
| P   | RISCO DE MORTE OU FERIMENTOS GRAVES. Não posicionar o banco para crianças numa posição contrária ao sentido de marcha quando o airbag de passageiro estiver activo.                                                              |
| LT  | GALI ĮSTIKTI MIRTIS ARBA GALITE RIMTAI SUSIŽEISTI. Nedėkite vaiko sėdynės atgretos nugarą į priekinį automobilio stiklą ten, kur yra veikiant keleivio oro pagalvė.                                                              |
| S   | KAN VARA LIVSHOTANDE ELLER LEDA TILL ALLVARLIGA SKADOR. Placera aldrig en bakåtvänd barnstol i framsätet då passagerarsidans krockkudde är aktiv.                                                                                |
| H   | HALÁSOS VAGY SÚLYOS BALESET KÖVETKEZHET BE. Ne helyezzük a gyermekülést a menetiránnyal szembe, ha az utas oldalán légszák működik.                                                                                              |
| LV  | VAR IZRAISĪT NĀVI VAI NOPIETNAS TRAUMAS. Nenovietot mazuļa sēdekli pretēji braukšanas virzienam, ja pasažiera pusē ir uzstādīts gaisa spilvens.                                                                                  |
| CZ  | HROZÍ NEBEZPEČÍ VÁŽNÉHO UBLÍŽENÍ NA ZDRAVÍ NEBO DOKONCE SMRTI. Neumísťujte detskou sedačku do opačnej polohy vŕči smeru jazdy v prípade aktívneho airbagu spolujazdce.                                                           |
| SLO | LAHKO PRIDE DO SMRTI ALI HUDIH POŠKODB. Otroškega avtomobilskega sedeža ne nameščajte v obratni smeri vožnje, če ima vozilo vgrajene zračne blazine za potnike.                                                                  |
| RO  | SE POATE PRODUCÉ DECESUL SAU LEZIUNI GRAVE. Nu aşezaţi scaunul de maşină pentru bebeluşi în poziţie contrară direcţiei de mers atunci când airbag-ul pasagerului este activat.                                                   |
| GR  | ΜΠΟΡΕΙ ΝΑ ΠΡΟΚΛΗΘΟΥΝ ΘΑΝΑΤΟΣ Ή ΣΟΒΑΡΑ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΑ.<br>Μην τοποθετείτε το καρεκλάκι αυτοκινήτου για παιδιά σε αντίθετη προς την φορά πορείας θέση σε περίπτωση που υπάρχει αερόσακος εν ενεργεία στη θέση συνεπιβάτη.                |
| BG  | ИМА ОПАСНОСТ ОТ СМЪРТ И СЕРИОЗНИ НАРАНЯВАНИЯ.<br>Не поставяйте столчето за пренасяне на бебета в положение обратно на посоката на движение, при положение активно на въздушната възглавница за пътуване.                         |
| SK  | MOŽE NASTAŤ SMŤ ALEBO VÁŽNE ZRANENIA. Nedávajte autosedačku pre deti do polohy proti chodu vozidla, keď je aktívny airbag spolujazdca.                                                                                           |
| RUS | ТРАВМЫ И ЛЕТАЛЬНЫЙ ИСХОД. Детское кресло, устанавливаемое против направления движения, нельзя монтировать на месте переднего пассажира, если последнее оборудовано активной подушкой безопасности.                               |
| HR  | OPASNOST OD TEŠKIH ILI SMRTONOSNIH OZLJEĐA.<br>Sjedala za djecu koja se montiraju u smjeru suprotnom od vožnje ne smiju se instalirati na prednja sjedala ako postoji aktivni zračni jastuk suvozača.                            |
| AS  | قد تحدث حالات وفاة أو إصابات بالغة. لا تستخدم مقاعد الأمان الخاصة بالأطفال على مقعد مزود "بوسادة هوائية"، حيث إن الطفل قد يتعرض للوفاة أو لإصابة بالغة.                                                                          |

## SIDE AIRBAGS

To help increase occupants protection in the event of side impact collisions, the vehicle is equipped with front side bags and window bags.

### Side bag

These consist of two bags located in the front seat backrests fig. 101 that protect the occupants' pelvis, chest and shoulder area in the event of a side impact of medium/high severity.

They are marked by the "AIRBAG" label sewn on the outer side of the front seats.



101

06106S0004EM

### Window bag

This consists of a "curtain" bag housed behind the roof side trim and covered by special trims fig. 102.

They are designed to protect the head of front and rear occupants in the event of a side collision, thanks to the wide cushion inflation surface.



102

06106S0005EM

The deployment of side bags in the event of side impacts of low severity is not required.

In the event of a side impact, the system provides best protection if the passenger sits on the seat in a correct position, allowing the window bag to inflate correctly.



88) 89) 90) 91) 92) 93) 94) 95) 96) 97) 98) 99) 100) 101)

### Important notes

Do not wash the seats with water or pressurised steam (wash by hand or at automatic seat washing stations).

The front and/or side airbags may activate in the event of sharp impacts to the underbody of the vehicle (e.g. impact with steps, pavements, potholes or road bumps etc.).

When the airbag deploys it emits a small amount of dust: the dust is harmless and does not indicate the beginning of a fire.

The dust may irritate the skin and eyes however: in this case, wash with neutral soap and water.

Airbag checking, repair and replacement must be carried out at an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

If the car is scrapped, have the airbag system deactivated at an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

Pretensioners and airbags are deployed in different ways on the basis of the type of collision. Failure to activate one or more of the devices does not indicate a system malfunction.



### WARNING

**88)** Do not apply stickers or other objects on the steering wheel, on the dashboard in the passenger side airbag area, on side upholstery on the roof or on the seats. Never put objects (e.g. mobile phones) on the passenger side of the dashboard since they could interfere with correct inflation of the passenger airbag and also cause serious injury to the passengers.

**89)** Always drive with your hands on the rim of the steering wheel so that the airbag can inflate freely if required. Do not drive with your body bent forward. Keep your back straight against the backrest.

**90)** The passenger airbag can be deactivated on the Connect system by selecting the following functions in sequence on the main menu: "Settings"; "Safety"; "Passenger airbag" and "Deactivation".



ABC

**91)** Do not affix rigid objects to the garment hooks or support handles.

**92)** Do not rest your head, arms or elbows on the door, windows or the area in which the Window bag is located to avoid possible injury during airbag inflation.

**93)** Never lean your head, arms or elbows out of the window.

**94)** If, when the ignition device is turned to ON, the  warning light does not switch on or stays on whilst driving, a fault may have occurred in the restraint systems. In this case the airbags or pretensioners may not be deployed in an impact or, in a lower number of cases, they may be deployed accidentally. Before continuing, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership immediately to have the system checked.

**95)** In case of a LED  OFF failure (located on the front courtesy light), the  warning light appears on the instrument panel.

**96)** On cars with side bags, do not cover the front seat backrests with extra covers.

**97)** Do not travel carrying objects in your lap, in front of your chest or between your lips (pipe, pencils, etc.): they could cause severe injury if the airbag is deployed.

**98)** If the car has been subject to theft, attempted theft, vandalism, or flooding, have the airbag system inspected at an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

**99)** Malfunction of the airbag failure warning light is indicated by the activation of an airbag failure icon and a dedicated message on the instrument panel display. The pyrotechnic charges are not disabled. Before continuing, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership immediately to have the system checked.

**100)** The airbag deployment threshold is higher than that of the pretensioners. For collisions in the range between the two thresholds, it is normal for only the pretensioners to be activated.

**101)** The airbag does not replace seat belts but increases their efficiency. Because front airbags are not deployed for low-speed crashes, side collisions, rear-end shunts or rollovers, occupants are protected, in addition to any side bags, only by their seat belts, which must therefore always be fastened.





Let's get to the core of the vehicle: seeing how you can exploit all of its potential to the full. We'll look at how to drive it safely in any situation, so that it can be a welcome companion, with our comfort and our wallets in mind.

# STARTING AND DRIVING

|                                                   |     |
|---------------------------------------------------|-----|
| STARTING THE ENGINE . . . . .                     | 104 |
| PARKING THE VEHICLE . . . . .                     | 105 |
| MANUAL GEARBOX . . . . .                          | 107 |
| AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION . . . . .                  | 108 |
| "ALFA DNA"™ SYSTEM . . . . .                      | 111 |
| START & STOP EVO . . . . .                        | 112 |
| SPEED LIMITER . . . . .                           | 113 |
| CRUISE CONTROL . . . . .                          | 114 |
| ACTIVE CRUISE CONTROL . . . . .                   | 115 |
| PARK SENSORS SYSTEM . . . . .                     | 122 |
| LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (LDW) SYSTEM . . . . .     | 124 |
| REAR BACK-UP CAMERA / DYNAMIC GRIDLINES . . . . . | 126 |
| REFUELLING THE VEHICLE . . . . .                  | 127 |
| TOWING TRAILERS . . . . .                         | 130 |

## STARTING THE ENGINE

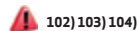


### STARTING THE ENGINE

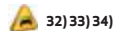
Before starting the engine, adjust the seat, the interior rear view mirrors, the door mirrors and fasten the seat belt correctly.

Never press the accelerator pedal for starting the engine.

If necessary, messages indicating the starting procedure can be shown on the display.



102) 103) 104)



32) 33) 34)

### Versions with manual gearbox

Proceed as follows:

- ☐ engage the parking brake and set the gear in neutral, on diesel versions turn the ignition switch to ON, the  symbol will appear on the instrument panel: wait until it goes off;
- ☐ fully depress the clutch pedal, without touching the accelerator;
- ☐ briefly press the ignition button;
- ☐ if the engine doesn't start within a few seconds, you need to repeat the procedure.
- ☐ if the problem persists, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

### Versions with automatic transmission

Proceed as follows:

- ☐ engage the electric parking brake and set the gear lever to P (Park) or N (Neutral),
- ☐ fully depress the brake pedal without touching the accelerator;
- ☐ briefly press the ignition button;
- ☐ if the engine doesn't start within a few seconds, you need to repeat the procedure.
- ☐ if the problem persists, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

### ENGINE STARTING FAILURE

#### Starting the engine with electronic key battery (Keyless Start) run down or flat

If the ignition device does not respond when the relevant button is pressed the electronic key battery might be run down or flat. Therefore, the system does not detect the presence of the electronic key on board the vehicle and displays a dedicated message.

### STOPPING THE ENGINE



35)

To stop the engine, proceed as follows:

- ☐ park the vehicle in a position that is not dangerous for oncoming traffic;
- ☐ engage a gear (versions with manual gearbox) or select P (Park) mode (versions with automatic transmission);

- ☐ with engine idling, press the start button.

### Vehicles with electronic key (Keyless Start)

If the vehicle speed is above 5 mph (8 km/h), it is still possible to switch off the engine by selecting an operating mode other than P (Park). To switch off the engine in this situation, hold down the ignition device button for a while or press it 3 times in a row within a few seconds.



### WARNING

**102)** It is dangerous to run the engine in enclosed areas. The engine takes in oxygen and releases carbon dioxide, carbon monoxide and other toxic gases.

**103)** The electro-hydraulic braking system is not active until the engine starts running. So, the brake pedal travel will be longer than normal. This does not indicate a fault.

**104)** Do not start the engine by pushing, towing or driving downhill. These manoeuvres may damage the catalytic converter.



### IMPORTANT

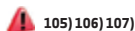
**32)** We recommend that during the initial period, or during the first 1600 km (1000 miles), you do not drive to full car performance (e.g. excessive acceleration, long journeys at top speed, sharp braking, etc.).

**33)** When the engine stopped never leave the ignition device in the ON position to prevent useless current draw from draining the battery.

**34)** Warning light  will flash after starting or during prolonged cranking to indicate a fault with the glow plug heating system. If the engine starts, the vehicle can be regularly used, but an Alfa Romeo Dealership must be contacted as soon as possible.

**35)** A quick burst on the accelerator before turning off the engine serves absolutely no practical purpose; it wastes fuel and is damaging for the engine.

## PARKING THE VEHICLE



**IMPORTANT** In addition to parking the vehicle with the parking brake always engaged, the wheel steered, chocks or stones positioned in front of the wheels (when on a steep slope), you must always engage:

*Manual transmission:*

☐ Engage 1<sup>st</sup> gear if the car is parked uphill or reverse gear if the car is parked downhill.

*Automatic transmission:*

☐ engage P (Park) mode;  
☐ always take the key with you when leaving the vehicle.

**IMPORTANT** Always engage the electric parking brake before leaving the vehicle.

### ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

The vehicle is equipped with electric parking brake to guarantee better use and optimal performance compared to a manually operated parking brake.

The electric parking brake features a switch, located on the central tunnel fig. 103, a motor with caliper for each rear wheel and an electronic control module.



103

0704650001EM

The electric parking brake can be engaged in two ways:

☐ *manually*, by pulling the switch on the central tunnel;  
☐ *automatically* in "Safe Hold" or "Auto Park Brake" conditions.

**IMPORTANT** Normally, the electric parking brake is engaged automatically when the engine is stopped. This function can be deactivated/activated on the Connect system by selecting the following items in sequence on the main menu: "Settings", "Driver assistance" and "Automatic parking brake".

**IMPORTANT** Should the vehicle battery be faulty, to unlock the electric parking brake the battery must be replaced.



ABC

### Engaging the parking brake manually

Briefly pull the switch located on the central tunnel to manually engage the electric parking brake when the vehicle is stationary.

Noise may be heard from the rear of the vehicle when engaging the electric parking brake.

A slight movement of the brake pedal may be detected when engaging the electric parking brake with the brake pedal pressed.

With the electric parking brake engaged, the warning light (ⓘ) on the instrument panel and the LED on the switch fig. 103 turn on.

**IMPORTANT** With the Electronic Parking Brake failure warning light on, some functions of the electric parking brake are deactivated. In this case the driver is responsible for brake activation and vehicle parking in complete safety conditions.

If, under exceptional circumstances, the use of the brake is required with the vehicle in motion, keep the switch on the central tunnel pulled as long as the brake action is necessary.

The (ⓘ) warning light may switch on with the hydraulic system temporarily unavailable; in this case braking is controlled by the motors.

The brake lights (stop) will also automatically switch on in the same way as for normal braking with the use of the brake pedal.

Release the switch on the central tunnel to stop the braking action with the vehicle in motion.

If, through this procedure, the vehicle is braked until a speed below 2 mph (3 km/h) is reached and the switch is kept pulled, the parking brake will definitively engage.

**IMPORTANT** Driving the vehicle with the electric parking brake engaged, or using it several times to slow down the vehicle, may cause severe damage to the braking system.

### Disengaging the electric parking brake manually

In order to manually release the parking brake, the ignition device should be at ON position. Moreover, you need to press the brake pedal, then press the switch on the central tunnel briefly.

Noise may be heard from the rear of the vehicle and a slight movement of the brake pedal may be detected during disengagement.

After disengaging the electric parking brake, the (ⓘ) warning light on the instrument panel and the LED on the fig. 103 switch turn off.

If the (ⓘ) warning light on the instrument panel remains on with the electric parking brake disengaged, this indicates a fault: in this case contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

**IMPORTANT** Never use gear position P (Park) instead of the electric parking brake. Always engage the electric parking brake when parking the vehicle to prevent injury or damage caused by the unexpected movement of the vehicle.

### ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE OPERATING MODES

The electric parking brake may operate as follows:

- *"Dynamic operating mode"*: this mode is activated by pulling the switch repeatedly whilst driving;
- *"Static engagement and release mode"*: with the vehicle stationary, the electric parking brake can be activated by pulling the switch on the central tunnel once. On the other hand, press the switch and the brake pedal at the same time to disengage the brake;
- *"Drive Away Release"*: (where provided) the electric parking brake will automatically disengage with the driver side seat belt fastened and the detection of an action performed by the driver to move the vehicle (forward gear or reverse gear);
- *"Safe Hold"*: if the vehicle speed is

lower than 2 mph (3 km/h), on vehicles with automatic transmission, the gear lever is not in P (Park) position and the driver's intention of leaving the vehicle is detected, the electric parking brake will automatically engage to hold the vehicle in safety conditions;

❑ "Auto Park Brake": if the vehicle speed is below 2 mph (3 km/h), the electric parking brake will automatically engage when the gear lever is in P (Park) position. The LED on the switch located on the central tunnel fig. 103 switches on together with the warning light (!) on the instrument panel when the parking brake is engaged and applied to the wheels. Each automatic parking brake engagement can be cancelled by pressing the switch on the central tunnel and at the same time moving the gear lever for the transmission to position P (Park).

### SAFE HOLD

It is a safety function that automatically engages the electric parking brake in the event of a dangerous condition for the vehicle.

If:

- ❑ the vehicle speed is below 2 mph (3 km/h);
- ❑ on vehicles with automatic transmission, a transmission operating mode different from P (Park) is activated;
- ❑ the driver's seat belt is not fastened;

- ❑ the driver side door is open;
- ❑ no attempts to apply pressure on the brake pedal have been detected.

the electric parking brake engages automatically to prevent vehicle movement.

The Safe Hold function can be temporarily disabled by pressing the switch located on the central tunnel and the brake pedal at the same time, with the vehicle stationary and the driver side door open.

Once disabled, the function will activate again when the vehicle speed reaches 12 mph (20 km/h) or the ignition device is moved to STOP and then to ON.



### WARNING

**105)** *In the case of parking manoeuvres on roads on a gradient, the front wheels must be steered towards the pavement (when parking downhill), or in the opposite direction if the vehicle is parked uphill. Block the wheels with a wedge or a stone if the car is parked on a steep slope.*

**106)** *Never leave children alone in an unattended vehicle; make sure that when you move away from the vehicle, you have the key with you.*

**107)** *The electric parking brake must always be engaged when leaving the vehicle.*

## MANUAL GEARBOX

! 108)

! 36)

To engage the gears, press the clutch pedal fully and put the gear lever into the required position (the diagram for gear engagement is shown on the knob).



104

0705650001EM

To engage reverse gear R from the idle position, press towards the left (until end of stroke) to avoid mistakenly inserting the 1<sup>st</sup> gear.

To engage 6<sup>th</sup> gear, operate the lever by pressing it towards the right in order to avoid engaging 4<sup>th</sup> gear by mistake. The same applies to the shift from 6<sup>th</sup> to 5<sup>th</sup> gear.

IMPORTANT Reverse can only be engaged when the vehicle is completely stationary. With the engine running, wait



ABC

for at least 2 seconds with the clutch pedal fully pressed before engaging reverse to prevent damage to the gears and grating.

**IMPORTANT** The clutch pedal should be used only for gear changes. Do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal, however lightly. In some circumstances, the electronic clutch control could cut in by interpreting the incorrect driving style as a fault.



### WARNING

**108)** *Depress the clutch pedal fully to change gear correctly. It is therefore essential that there is nothing under the pedals: make sure the mats are lying flat and do not get in the way of the pedals.*



### IMPORTANT

**36)** *Do not drive with your hand resting on the gear lever as the force exerted, even if slight, could lead over time to premature wear of the gearbox internal components.*

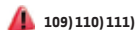
## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



The vehicle can be equipped with a 8-speed automatic transmission.

The gearbox/transmission can function in two operating modes: "Automatic" or "Sequential".

### GEAR LEVER



109) 110) 111)



37) 38)

The gear functioning is controlled by the gear lever control 1 fig. 105, which can assume the following positions:

- ☐ **P** = Park
- ☐ **R** = Reverse
- ☐ **N** = Neutral
- ☐ **D** = Drive, (automatic forward speed)
- ☐ **AutoStick**: + shifting to higher gear in sequential driving mode; - shifting to lower gear in sequential driving mode.



105

07076S0002EM

The positions diagram is illustrated on the top of the lever.

The letter corresponding to the selected mode lights up and can be seen on the instrument panel display.

To select one of the operating modes, move the lever forwards or backwards and press the brake pedal at the same time.

To engage R (Reverse) mode, press the pedal and the button 3 fig. 106 in combination.

To pass from P (Park) mode directly to D (Drive) mode, in addition to pressing the brake pedal, it is also necessary to press button 3.

To pass from R (Reverse) mode directly to D (Drive) mode and vice versa, in addition to pressing the brake pedal, it is necessary to press button 3.

The P (Parking) mode can be enabled pushing the P (Parking) 2 button fig. 105.



106

07076S0005EM

It is not possible to select N (Neutral) mode from P (Park) mode.

P (Park) mode is automatically activated if the following conditions are met simultaneously:

- ☐ D (Drive) or R (Reverse) mode is active;
- ☐ the car's speed is close to 0;
- ☐ the brake pedal is released;
- ☐ the driver's seat belt is not fastened;
- ☐ the driver's door is open.

If using the gear shift in "sequential" mode, you can activate it by moving the lever from D (Drive) to the left and then forward towards the - symbol or back towards the + symbol and the gear is shifted.

To exit position P (Park), or to pass from position N (Neutral) to position D (Drive) or R (Reverse) when the vehicle is stopped or is moving at a low speed, the brake pedal must also be pressed.

**IMPORTANT DO NOT** accelerate while shifting from position P (or N) to another position.

**IMPORTANT** After selecting a gear, wait a few seconds before accelerating. This precaution is particularly important with a cold engine.

### **AutoStick - Manual (sequential) shifting mode**

In the case of frequent gearshifting (e.g. for sport driving, when the vehicle is

driven with a heavy load, on slopes, with strong headwind or when towing heavy trailers), it is recommended to use the AutoStick (sequential shifting) mode to select and keep a lower fixed ratio.

In this condition, using the lowest gear improves the car performance, preventing overheating.

It is possible to shift from position D (Drive) to the sequential mode regardless of vehicle speed.

### **Activation**

Starting from D (Drive) mode, to activate the sequential drive mode, move the lever to the left (- and + indication of the trim). The gear engaged will be shown on the display.

Gearshifting is made by moving the gear lever forwards, towards symbol - or backwards, towards symbol +.

### **Steering wheel stalks** (where provided)

The gear can be manually shifted also by using the levers behind the steering wheel, pull the right gear lever (+) towards the steering wheel and release it to engage a higher gear; perform the same operation with the left lever (-) to engage a lower gear fig. 107.

To engage N (Neutral): pull simultaneously both levers.

To activate D (Drive) mode, from N

(Neutral), P (Parking) and R (Reverse): push the brake pedal and the right lever (+).



107

0707650006EM

**IMPORTANT** When only one manual shift is performed, the letter D will remain on the display with the engaged gear next to it.

### **Deactivation**

To deactivate the sequential driving mode, bring the gear lever back in position D (Drive) ("automatic" driving mode).

### **TRANSMISSION EMERGENCY FUNCTION** (where provided)

Transmission operation is constantly monitored to detect any fault. If a condition that might damage the transmission is detected, the "transmission emergency" function is activated.



ABC



In this condition, the transmission stays in 4<sup>th</sup> gear, regardless of the selected gear. Positions P (Parking), R (Reverse) and N (Neutral) still work.

The  symbol might light up in the display.

In the event of a "transmission emergency" immediately contact the nearest Alfa Romeo Dealership.

### **Temporary failure**

If the warning light goes on, you can confirm if the failure is temporary and restore the gear's proper functioning by proceeding as follows:

- ☐ stop the vehicle;
- ☐ engage P (Park);
- ☐ bring the ignition device to STOP;
- ☐ wait for about 10 seconds, then restart the engine;
- ☐ select the desired gear: if the problem is not detected anymore the transmission correct operation is restored.

**IMPORTANT** In the event of a temporary failure it is in any case recommended to contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.

### **GEAR ENGAGEMENT DISABLING SYSTEM WITHOUT BRAKE PEDAL PRESSED**

This system prevents you from moving the gear lever from position P (Park) if the brake pedal has not been previously depressed.

To bring the gear lever to a position other than P (Park), the ignition device must be in position AVV (engine on or off) and the brake pedal must be pressed.



### **WARNING**

**109)** Never use position P (Park) instead of the electric parking brake. Always engage the electric parking brake when parking the vehicle to avoid the accidental movement of the vehicle.

**110)** If the P (Park) position is not engaged, the vehicle could move and injure people. Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the gear lever is in position P and that the electric parking brake is engaged.

**111)** Do not shift the gear lever to N (Neutral) and do not stop the engine when driving on a downhill road. This type of driving is dangerous and reduces the possibility of intervening in the case of variation of the road traffic or surface. You risk losing control of your vehicle and causing accidents.



### **IMPORTANT**

**37)** Before selecting P (Park) mode, bring the ignition device to position ON and press the brake pedal. Otherwise, the gear lever may get damaged.

**38)** Engage reverse only with the car stationary, engine at idling speed and accelerator fully released.



## "ALFA DNA™" SYSTEM



### "ALFA DNA™" SYSTEM

This device allows, using the selector (on the central tunnel) fig. 108, different car response modes to be selected according to driving style and road conditions:



108

07076S0504EM

- ☐ d = Dynamic (sports driving mode)
- ☐ n = Normal (mode for driving in normal conditions)
- ☐ a = Advanced Efficiency (ECO driving mode for maximum fuel savings).

On the instrument panel display, the different modes are characterised by different colours:

- ☐ Normal - Blue,
- ☐ Dynamic - Red
- ☐ Advanced Efficiency - Green

## DRIVING MODES

### "Normal" Mode

#### Engagement/disengagement

It is activated by rotating the selector to the letter "n", the displays light up in blue.

To deactivate the Normal mode, move the selector to another mode ("d" or "a").

### "Dynamic" Mode

#### Engagement/disengagement

It is activated by rotating the selector to the letter "d", the displays light up in red.

To deactivate the Dynamic mode, move the selector to "n", Normal mode.

### "Advanced Efficiency" Mode

#### Engagement/disengagement

It is activated by rotating the selector to the letter "a", the displays light up in green.

To deactivate the Advanced Efficiency mode, move the selector to "n", Normal mode.

#### IMPORTANT NOTES

☐ When the engine is next started, the "Advanced Efficiency", "Dynamic" and "Normal" mode selected previously is retained. The system will reactivate in "Advanced Efficiency", "Dynamic" or "Normal" mode, depending on which mode was selected before the engine was stopped.

☐ It is not possible to go directly from "Dynamic" mode to "Advanced Efficiency" mode and vice versa. You must always activate the "Normal" mode first and then select the other mode.



ABC

## START & STOP EVO



The Start & Stop Evo system automatically stops the engine each time the vehicle is stationary and starts it again when the driver wants to move off.

In this way, the vehicle efficiency is increased, by reducing consumption, dangerous gas emissions and sound pollution.

### OPERATING MODE

#### Stopping the engine

##### **Versions with mechanical gearbox**

With the vehicle stopped, the engine stops with gearbox in neutral and clutch pedal released.

##### **Versions with automatic transmission**

With vehicle at a standstill and brake pedal pressed, the engine switches off if the gear lever is in a position other than R.

The system does not operate when the gear lever is in R, for making parking manoeuvres easier.

In the event of stops uphill, engine switching off is disabled to make the "Hill Start Assist" function available (works only with running engine).

NOTE The engine can only be automatically stopped after having run at

about 6 mph (10 km/h). After an automatic restart, to stop the engine you only need to move the vehicle (exceed a speed of 0.3 mph (0.5 km/h)).

Engine stopping is signalled by the (A) symbol lighting up on the instrument panel display.

#### Restarting the engine

##### **Versions with mechanical gearbox**

To restart the engine, press the clutch pedal.

If the vehicle does not start when the clutch is pressed, place the gear lever in neutral and repeat the procedure. If the problem persists, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

##### **Versions with automatic transmission**

To restart the engine, release the brake pedal.

With brake pressed, if the gear lever is in automatic mode - D (Drive) - the engine can be restarted by moving the lever to R (Reverse) or N (Neutral) or "AutoStick".

With brake pressed, if the gear lever is in "AutoStick" mode, the engine can be restarted by moving the lever to "+" or "-", or R (Reverse) or N (Neutral).

When the engine has been stopped automatically, keeping the brake pedal pressed, the brake can be released

keeping the engine off by quickly shifting the gear lever to P (Park).

To restart the engine, just move the lever out of a position other than P.

### SYSTEM MANUAL ACTIVATION/DEACTIVATION



112)



39)

To manually activate/deactivate the system, press the button inserted in the control panel on the left of the steering wheel, fig. 109



109

0712650001EM

- ☐ LED off: system activated;
- ☐ LED on: system deactivated.

### SAFETY FUNCTIONS

When the engine is stopped through the Start & Stop Evo system, if the driver releases their seat belt, opens the driver's or passenger's door or releases the engine bonnet from inside the vehicle,

the engine can be restarted only by using the ignition device.

This condition is indicated to the driver both through a buzzer and a message on the display.



### WARNING

**112)** When replacing the battery, always contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership. Replace the battery with one of the same type (HEAVY DUTY) and with the same specifications.



### IMPORTANT

**39)** If the climate comfort is to be favoured, the Start&Stop system can be deactivated, for a continuous operation of the climate control system.

## SPEED LIMITER



### DESCRIPTION

This device allows the speed of the vehicle to be limited to values which can be set by the driver.

The maximum speed can be set both with vehicle stationary and in motion. The minimum speed that can be set is 20 mph (30 km/h).

When the device is active, the vehicle speed depends on the pressure at the accelerator pedal, until the set speed limit is reached.

### ACTIVATING THE DEVICE

The function can be activated/deactivated on the Connect system.

#### Activating the device

To access the function, on the main menu select the following items in sequence: "Settings", "Safety", "Speed Limiter" and "on".

The activation of the device is signalled by the displaying of the green symbol along with the last speed set.

## SPEED LIMIT PROGRAMMING

To access the function, on the main menu select the following items in sequence: "Settings", "Safety" and "Speed Limiter Set Speed".

By turning the Rotary Pad, the speed increases by 5 mph (5 km/h), on rotation, from a minimum of 20 mph (30 km/h) to a maximum of 110 mph (180 km/h).

### DEACTIVATING THE DEVICE

#### Deactivating the device

To access the function, on the main menu select the following items in sequence: "Settings", "Safety", "Speed Limiter" and "off".

#### Automatic deactivation of the device

The device deactivates automatically in the event of fault in the system. In this case, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.



ABC

## CRUISE CONTROL

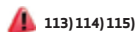


This is an electronically controlled driving assistance device that allows the desired vehicle speed to be maintained, without having to press the accelerator pedal. This device can be used at a speed above 25 mph (40 km/h) on long stretches of dry, straight roads with few variations (e.g. motorways).

It is therefore not recommended to use this device on extra-urban roads with traffic. Do not use it in town.

Going downhill, the system could brake the car to keep the pre-set speed limit.

### ACTIVATING THE DEVICE



To activate the device press button fig. 110.

The activation of the device is signalled by the switching on of the white warning light (⚠) on the display.

The Cruise Control function can remain active concurrently with the Speed Limiter system. If a speed limit below the one indicated in the Cruise Control is selected, the Cruise Control speed will be lowered to that of the Speed Limiter.

This function remains available (where provided) in RACE mode.



110

0714650001EM

The device cannot be engaged in 1<sup>st</sup> or reverse gear: it is advisable to engage it in 3<sup>rd</sup> gear or higher.

**IMPORTANT** It is dangerous to leave the device on when it is not used. There is a risk of inadvertently activating it and losing control of the vehicle due to unexpected excessive speed.

### SETTING THE DESIRED SPEED

Proceed as follows:

- ☐ activate the device;
- ☐ when the vehicle has reached the desired speed, raise/lower the SET switch and release fig. 110 to activate the device. When the accelerator is released, the vehicle will keep the selected speed automatically.

If needed (when overtaking for instance), you can accelerate simply by pressing the

accelerator; when you release the pedal, the vehicle goes back to the speed stored previously.

When travelling downhill with the device active, the vehicle speed may slightly exceed the stored one.

**IMPORTANT** Before raising/lowering the SET switch the vehicle must be travelling at a constant speed on a flat surface.

### INCREASING/DECREASING SPEED

Once the Cruise Control has been activated, the speed can be increased/decreased by lifting the SET switch fig. 110.

Keeping the button (high/low) pressed, the set speed will increase until the button is released, then the new speed will be stored.

### Accelerating when overtaking

Depress the accelerator pedal: when this is released the vehicle will gradually go back to the stored speed.

**IMPORTANT** The device keeps the speed stored even uphill and downhill. A slight variation in the speed on slight rises is completely normal.

## RECALLING THE SPEED

For versions with automatic transmission operating in D mode (Drive - automatic), press and release the RES fig. 110 button to recall the previously set speed.

For versions with manual gearbox or automatic transmission in Autostick (sequential) mode, before recalling the previously set speed you should accelerate until getting close to it, then press and release the RES button.

## DEACTIVATING THE DEVICE

Lightly pressing the brake pedal deactivates the Cruise Control without deleting the stored speed.

The Cruise Control may be deactivated also by applying the electric parking brake or when the braking system is operated (e.g. operation of the ESC system).

The stored speed is deleted in the following cases:

- ☐ pressing the on/off button or switching off the engine;
- ☐ if there is a malfunction in the Cruise Control.

## DEACTIVATING THE DEVICE

The Cruise Control is deactivated by pressing the activation/deactivation button or bringing the ignition device to the STOP position.



### WARNING

**113)** When travelling with the device active, never move the gear lever to neutral.

**114)** In case of a malfunction or failure of the device, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

**115)** The Cruise Control can be dangerous if the system cannot keep a constant speed. In specific conditions speed may be excessive, resulting in the risk of losing control of the vehicle and causing accidents. Do not use the device in heavy traffic or on winding, icy, snowy or slippery roads.

## ACTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

(where provided)



**116) 117) 118) 119) 120) 121)**



**40) 41) 42) 43) 44) 45) 46)**

The Active Cruise Control (ACC) is a driver assist device which combines the Cruise Control functions with one for controlling the distance from the vehicle ahead.

The device allows to hold the vehicle at the desired speed without needing to press the accelerator. It also allows to hold a given distance from the vehicle ahead (the distance can be set by the driver).

The Active Cruise Control (ACC) uses a radar sensor, located behind the front bumper fig. 111 and a camera, located in the middle area of the windscreen fig. 112, to detect the presence of a vehicle close ahead.



ABC



111

06016S0003EM



112

06016S0004EM

The device further enhances driving comfort provided by the electronic Cruise Control when on the motorway or out of town with light traffic.

### Important notes

If the sensor does not detect any vehicle ahead, the device will maintain a fixed set speed.

If the sensor detects a vehicle ahead, the device automatically intervenes by

braking (or accelerating) slightly in order not to exceed the original set speed, so that the vehicle keeps the preset distance, seeking to adapt to the speed of the vehicle ahead.

In the cases described below, the system performance is not guaranteed, it is therefore advisable to turn the device on by pressing the  fig. 113 button:

- ☐ driving in fog, heavy rain, snow, heavy traffic and in complex driving situations (e.g. on motorways with roadworks in progress);
- ☐ driving near a bend (winding roads), icy, snowy, slippery roads or with steep climbs and descents;
- ☐ entering a turn lane or on a slip road;
- ☐ towing a trailer;
- ☐ when circumstances do not allow safe driving at a constant speed.

### ACTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ACTIVATION/DEACTIVATION

The device can have four operating states:

- ☐ Enabled (speed not set);
- ☐ Activated (speed set);
- ☐ Paused;
- ☐ Deactivated.

### Enabling / Activating

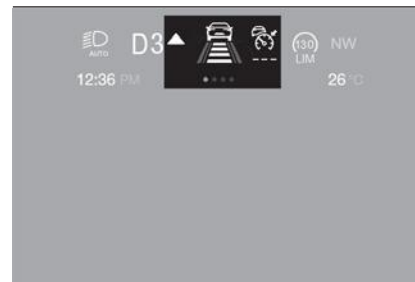
To enable the device, press and release the  fig. 113 button.



113

07146S0010EM

When the device is enabled and ready to operate, the display shows the white icon with dashes in place of the speed fig. 114.



114

07146S0016EM

Setting a speed activates the system. The display shows the icon in green with the set speed.

The device cannot be enabled when RACE mode is active.

**IMPORTANT** It is dangerous to leave the device activated when it is not used. There is a risk of inadvertently activating it and losing control of the vehicle due to unexpected excessive speed.

### Pausing / Deactivating

With the device enabled (speed not set), press the  button.

With the device active (speed set), press the  button to Pause. The display will show the icon in white with the speed in brackets. To definitively deactivate the device, press the  button again.

### SETTING THE DESIRED SPEED

The speed can be set from a minimum of 30 km/h (or 20 mph for markets with instrument panels in mph) to a maximum of 180 km/h (or 110 mph for markets with instrument panels in mph).

When the car reaches the desired speed, raise/lower the SET fig. 115 switch and release it to activate the device. When the accelerator is released, the vehicle will keep the selected speed automatically



115

0714650017EM

While the accelerator pedal is pressed:  
☐ the device will not be able to control the distance between the vehicle and the one ahead. In this case the speed will be determined only by the position of the accelerator pedal.

The device will return to normal operation as soon as the accelerator pedal is released.

The system **cannot** be set:

- ☐ when pressing the brake pedal;
- ☐ when the brakes are overheated;
- ☐ when the electric parking brake has been operated;
- ☐ when either P (park), R (reverse) or N (neutral) is engaged;
- ☐ when the engine rpm is above a maximum threshold;
- ☐ when the vehicle speed is not within the settable speed range;
- ☐ when the ESC (or ABS or other stability control systems) are operating

or have just operated;

- ☐ when the ESC system is off;
- ☐ when the Forward Collision Warning Plus system (where provided) is braking automatically;
- ☐ in the event of device failure;
- ☐ when the engine is off;
- ☐ in case of obstruction of the radar sensor (in this case the bumper area where it is located must be cleaned).

In case of system set, the conditions described above also cause a cancellation or deactivation of the system with times that may vary according to the conditions.

**IMPORTANT** The device will not be deactivated when speeds higher than those set are reached by pressing the accelerator pedal (180 km/h or 110 mph, the latter for instrument panels set to miles per hour). In these conditions, the device may not work correctly and it is advisable to deactivate it.

### CHANGING SPEED

#### Increasing speed

Once the device has been activated, you can increase the speed by lifting the SET switch. Each time it is operated, the speed increases by 1 mph (1 km/h).

By holding the button up, the set speed will increase in steps of 6 mph (10 km/h)



ABC

until the button is released, then the new speed will be stored.

### Decreasing speed

Once the device has been activated, you can decrease the speed by lowering the SET switch. Each time it is operated, the speed decreases by 1 mph (1 km/h).

By holding the button down, the set speed will decrease in steps of 6 mph (10 km/h) until the button is released, then the new speed will be stored.

**IMPORTANT** Moving the SET switch allows you to adjust the speed according to the selected unit of measurement ("metric" or "imperial") set on the Connect system (see dedicated supplement).

### Important notes

By keeping the accelerator pedal depressed, the vehicle can continue to accelerate beyond the set speed. In this case, use the SET switch to set the speed to the vehicle's current speed.

When you press the SET button to reduce the speed, the braking system intervenes automatically if the engine brake does not slow the vehicle down sufficiently to reach the set speed. The device holds the set speed uphill and downhill; however a slight variation is entirely normal, particularly on slight gradients.

The automatic transmission could change

to a lower gears when driving downhill or when accelerating. This is normal and necessary to maintain the set speed.

The device is switched off while driving if the brakes overheat.

### ACCELERATING WHEN OVERTAKING

When driving with the device active and following a vehicle, the device provides additional acceleration to facilitate overtaking, when travelling over a given speed and switches on the left direction indicator (of the right indicator for right-hand drive versions).

In left-hand traffic, the overtaking assist function is only active when the left-hand lane is used for overtaking the vehicle ahead (the opposite activation logic is used in right-hand traffic countries).

The device detects the direction of traffic automatically when the vehicle passes from left-hand traffic to right-hand traffic. In this case, the overtaking assist function is only active when the reference vehicle is overtaken on the right. The additional acceleration is activated when the driver uses the right direction indicator.

In this condition, the device no longer provides the overtaking assist function on the left-hand side until it determines that the vehicle has returned to left-hand traffic conditions.

### RECALLING THE SPEED

Once the system has been cancelled but not deactivated, if a speed was previously set simply press the RES button and remove your foot from the accelerator to recall it.

The system will be set to the last stored speed.



116

0714650018EM

Before returning to the previously set speed, bring the speed close to that value, then press the RES button and release it.

**IMPORTANT** The recall function must only be used if the road and traffic conditions so allow. Recalling an excessively high or low speed for the current traffic and road conditions could cause an acceleration or a deceleration of the vehicle. Failure to comply with these precautions may cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.



## SETTING THE DISTANCE BETWEEN VEHICLES

The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead may be set to 1 bar (short), 2 bars (medium), 3 bars (long), 4 bars (maximum) fig. 117.



117

07146S0019EM

The distances from the vehicle ahead are proportional to speed.

The interval of time with respect to the vehicle ahead remains constant and varies from 1 second (for the short distance 1-bar setting) to 2 seconds (for the maximum distance 4-bar setting).

The set distance is shown on the display by a dedicated icon.

The setting is 4 (maximum) the first time the device is used. After the distance has been modified by the driver, the new distance will be stored also after the system is deactivated and reactivated.

## To decrease the distance

Press and release the fig. 118 button to decrease the distance setting. The distance setting decreases by one bar (shorter) every time the button is pressed.



118

07146S0015EM

The set speed is held if there are no vehicles ahead. Once the shortest distance has been reached, a further press of the button will set the longest distance.

If a slower car is detected in the same lane, the car icon on the display turns from grey to white. The device automatically adjusts the car's speed to keep the set distance, independently of the set speed.

The vehicle holds the set distance until:

- ❑ the vehicle ahead accelerates to a speed higher than the set speed;

- ❑ the vehicle ahead leaves the lane or the detection field of the Active Cruise Control device sensor;
- ❑ the distance setting is changed;
- ❑ the Active Cruise Control device is deactivated/paused.

**IMPORTANT** The maximum braking applied by the device is limited. The driver may apply the brakes in all cases if needed.

**IMPORTANT** If the device predicts that the braking level is insufficient to hold the set distance, either "BRAKE!" or a dedicated message is displayed to warn the driver of approaching the vehicle ahead. An acoustic signal is also emitted. In this case, it is advisable to brake immediately as necessary to hold a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.

**IMPORTANT** The driver is responsible for ensuring that there are no pedestrians, other vehicles or objectives along the direction of the vehicle. Failure to comply with these precautions may cause serious accidents and injuries.

**IMPORTANT** The driver is fully responsible for holding a safe distance from the vehicle ahead respecting the highway code in force in the respective country.



ABC

## “STOP AND GO” STRATEGY

The “Stop and Go” operating strategy allows you to maintain a safe distance from the vehicle ahead until the car has completely stopped. It will also restart the car automatically if the vehicle ahead moves off within two seconds, otherwise it is necessary to press the accelerator pedal or the RES button to restart.

## DEACTIVATION

The device is deactivated and the set speed is cancelled if:

- ☐ if the  button on the Active Cruise Control is pressed (with the device enabled or paused);
- ☐ the ignition device is in the STOP position;
- ☐ RACE mode is activated.

The device is cancelled (the set speed and distance are stored):

- ☐ when the device is paused (see the “Activating / Deactivating Active Cruise Control” paragraph);
- ☐ when the conditions shown in the “Setting the desired speed” paragraph occur;

## SYSTEM LIMITED OPERATION WARNING

If the dedicated message is shown on the display, a condition limiting the system operation may have occurred. The possible reasons of this limitation

are something blocking the camera view or a fault. If an obstruction is signalled, clean the area of the windscreen indicated in fig. 112 and check that the message has disappeared.

When the conditions limiting the system functions end, this will go back to normal and complete operation.

Should the fault persist, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

## PRECAUTIONS WHILE DRIVING

The device may not work correctly in some driving conditions (see below): the driver must control the car at all times.

### Towing a trailer

Use of the device is not recommended while towing a trailer.

### VEHICLE not aligned

The device may not detect a car travelling on the same lane but which is not aligned along the same direction of travel or a car which is cutting in from a side lane.

Sufficient distance from the cars ahead may not be guaranteed in these cases.

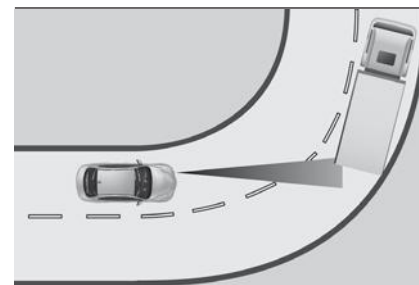
The non-aligned car can weave in and out of the driving direction causing the car to brake or accelerate unexpectedly.

### Steering and bends

On bends fig. 119 with the device set, it could limit speed and acceleration to guarantee vehicle stability even if no

vehicles are detected ahead.

When leaving the bend, the device resets the previously set speed.



119

07146S0011EM

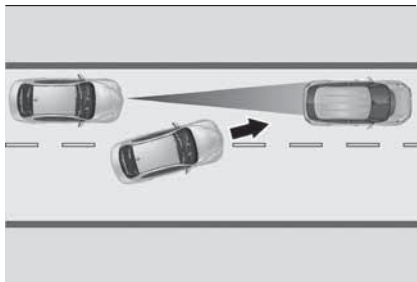
**IMPORTANT** In case of narrow curves, the performance of the device could be limited. In this case, it is advisable to deactivate the device. Moreover, remember that the device only limits the speed DURING a bend and not BEFORE it, so always take great care.

### Using the device on gradient

When driving on roads with variable gradient, the device may not detect the presence of a vehicle on the lane. Device performance could be limited according to speed, load, traffic conditions and gradient steepness.

### Lane change

The device may not detect the presence of a vehicle until it is fully in your lane.



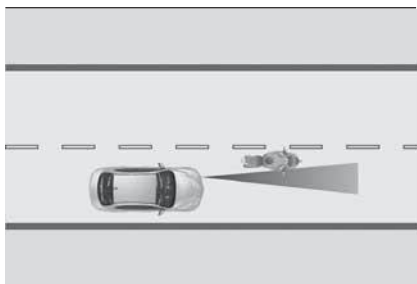
120

07146S0012EM

In this case, sufficient distance from the vehicle which is changing lane may not be guaranteed: it is advisable to pay the utmost attention at all times and be always ready to press the brakes if needed.

### Small cars

Some narrow vehicles (e.g. bicycles and motorcycles fig. 121 ) travelling near the outer edges of the lane or which enter the lane from kerbside are not detected until they are fully in the lane.



121

07146S0013EM

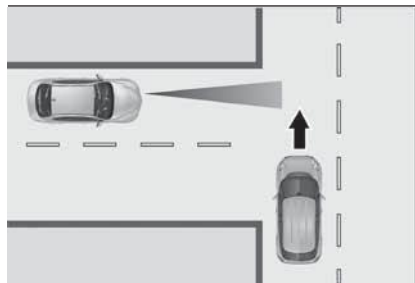
Sufficient distance from the cars ahead may not be guaranteed in these cases.

### Stationary objects and cars

The device cannot detect the presence of stationary cars or objects. For example, the device will not operate if the vehicle ahead leaves the lane and a vehicle ahead of that one is standing on the lane. Pay the utmost attention at all times and be always ready to press the brakes if needed.

### Objects and cars moving in opposite or crosswise direction

The device cannot detect the presence of objects or vehicles travelling in opposite or crosswise direction fig. 122 and consequently will not be operated.



122

07146S0014EM



### WARNING

**116)** Pay the utmost attention while driving at all times and be always ready to press the brakes if needed.

**117)** The system is an aid for the driver, who must always pay full attention while driving. The responsibility always rests with the driver, who must take into account the traffic conditions in order to drive in complete safety. The driver must always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front.

**118)** The device is not activated in presence of pedestrians, oncoming vehicles in the opposite direction of travel or moving in the crosswise direction and stationary objects (e.g. a vehicle standing in a queue or a broken down vehicle).

**119)** The device cannot take account of road, traffic and weather conditions, and conditions of poor visibility (e.g. fog).

**120)** The device does not always fully recognise complex driving conditions that could cause it to determine the safe distance to be held incorrectly or not at all.

**121)** The device cannot apply the maximum braking force: the car will not be stopped completely.



### IMPORTANT

**40)** The system may have limited or absent operation due to weather conditions such as: heavy rain, hail, thick fog, heavy snow.



ABC

**41)** The section of the bumper before the sensor must not be covered with adhesives, auxiliary headlights or any other object.

**42)** Operation can be adversely affected by any structural change made to the vehicle, such as a modification to the front geometry, tyre change, or a heavier load than the standard load of the vehicle.

**43)** Incorrect repairs made on the front part of the vehicle (e.g. bumper, chassis) may alter the position of the radar sensor, and adversely affect its operation. Go to an Alfa Romeo Dealership for any operation of this type.

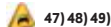
**44)** Do not tamper with nor carry out any intervention on the radar sensor or on the camera on the windscreen. In the event of a sensor failure, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

**45)** Do not wash with high-pressure jets in the bumper lower area: in particular do not operate on the system's electrical connector.

**46)** Be careful in the case of repairs and new paintings in the area around the sensor (panel covering the sensor on the left side of the bumper). In the event of a frontal impact the sensor may automatically deactivate and display a warning to indicate that the sensor needs to be repaired. Even without a malfunction warning, deactivate the system operation if you think that the position of the radar sensor has changed (e.g. due to low-speed frontal impact as during parking manoeuvres). In these cases, go to an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the radar sensor realigned or replaced.

## PARK SENSORS SYSTEM

(where provided)



### VERSIONS WITH 4 SENSORS

The parking sensors, located in the rear bumper fig. 123, detect the presence of any obstacles and warn the driver about them, through an acoustic signal and, where provided, visual indications on the instrument panel display.



123

07176S0001EM

### Engagement/disengagement

To disengage the system press button fig. 124.

The LED in the button will light up or not when the system switches from on to off (and vice versa).



124

07176S0002EM

- ☐ LED off: system activated;
- ☐ LED light on steady: system deactivated;

If the button is pressed with a system failure, the LED flashes for about 5 seconds, then it stays on constantly.

### System activation/deactivation

The system, when engaged, is automatically activated by engaging the reverse gear, while it is deactivated by engaging another gear.

### Operation with a trailer

The operation of the sensors is automatically deactivated when the trailer's electric plug is inserted in the car's tow hook socket. The sensors are automatically reactivated when the trailer's cable plug is removed.

## VERSIONS WITH 8 SENSORS

The parking sensors, located in the front (fig. 125 ) and rear (fig. 126 ) bumper, detect the presence of any obstacles and warn the driver through an acoustic signal and, where provided, visual indications on the instrument panel display.



125

0717650003EM



126

0717650001EM

### Engagement/disengagement

To disengage the system press button fig. 124 fig. 124.

The LED in the button will light up or not when the system switches from on to off (and vice versa).

- ☐ LED off: system activated;
- ☐ LED light on steady: system deactivated.

If the button is pressed with a system failure, the LED flashes for about 5 seconds, then it stays on constantly.

### System activation/deactivation

When the reverse gear is engaged and the system is on, the front and rear sensors are activated. If a different gear is engaged, the rear sensors are deactivated, while the front sensors remain active until 10 mph (15 km/h) are exceeded.

### Operation with a trailer

The operation of the rear sensors is automatically deactivated when the trailer's electric plug is inserted in the vehicle's tow hook socket, while the front sensors stay active and can provide acoustic and visual warnings. The rear sensors are automatically reactivated when the trailer's cable plug is removed.

### Important notes

Some conditions may influence the performance of the parking system:

- ☐ reduced sensor sensitivity and a reduction in the parking assistance system performance could be due to the

presence of: ice, snow, mud, thick paint, on the surface of the sensor;

- ☐ the sensor may detect a non-existent obstacle ("echo interference") due to mechanical interference, for example when washing the vehicle, in rain (strong wind), hail;
- ☐ the signals sent by the sensor can also be altered by the presence of ultrasonic systems (e.g. pneumatic brake systems of trucks or pneumatic drills) near the vehicle;
- ☐ parking assistance system performance can also be influenced by the position of the sensors, for example due to a change in the ride setting (caused by wear to the shock absorbers, suspension), or by changing tyres, overloading the vehicle or carrying out specific tuning operations that require the vehicle to be lowered;
- ☐ the presence of a tow hook without trailer, which may interfere with the correct operation of the parking sensors. Before using the Park Sensors system, it is recommended to remove the removable tow hook ball assembly and the relevant attachment from the vehicle when the latter is not used for towing operations. Failure to comply with this prescription may cause personal injuries or damage to vehicles or obstacles since, when the continuous acoustic signal is emitted, the tow hook ball is already in a



ABC

position that is much closer to the obstacle than the rear bumper. If you wish to leave the tow hook fitted without towing a trailer, it is advisable to contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership for the Park Sensors system update operations because the tow hook could be detected as an obstacle by the central sensors.

❑ the presence of adhesives on the sensors. Therefore, take care not to place adhesives on the sensors.



### WARNING

**122)** Parking and other potentially dangerous manoeuvres are, however, always the driver's responsibility. When performing these operations, always make sure that there are no other people (especially children) or animals on the route you want to take. The parking sensors are an aid for the driver, but the driver must never allow their attention to lapse during potentially dangerous manoeuvres, even those executed at low speeds.



### IMPORTANT

**47)** The sensors must be clean of mud, dirt, snow or ice in order for the system to operate correctly. Be careful not to scratch or damage the sensors while cleaning them. Avoid using dry, rough or hard cloths. The sensors should be washed using clean water with the addition of car shampoo if necessary. When using special washing equipment such as high pressure jets or steam cleaning, clean the sensors very quickly keeping the jet more than 10 cm away.

**48)** Have interventions on the bumper in the area of the sensors carried out only by an Alfa Romeo Dealership. Interventions on the bumper that are not carried out properly may compromise the operation of the parking sensors.

**49)** Only have the bumpers repainted or any retouches to the paintwork in the area of the sensors carried out by an Alfa Romeo Dealership. Incorrect paint application could affect the operation of the parking sensors.

## LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (LDW) SYSTEM



### DESCRIPTION

**50) 51) 52) 53) 54) 55)**

The Lane Departure Warning system makes use of a camera located on the windscreen to detect the lane limits and calculate the position of the vehicle within such limits, in order to make sure that it remains inside the lane.

When one or both lane limits are detected and the vehicle passes over one without the driver's say-so (direction indicator not turned on), the system emits an acoustic signal.

If the vehicle continues to go beyond the line of the lane without any intervention from the driver, the surpassed line will light up on the display (left or right) to urge the driver to bring the vehicle back into the limits of the lane.

### SYSTEM ON/OFF

The system is activated/deactivated by pressing the button, fig. 127

Each time the engine is started, the system maintains the operating mode that was selected when it was previously switched off.



127

07226S0001EM

### Activation conditions

Once switched on, the system becomes active only if the following conditions are met:

- ☐ the car speed is above 37 mph (60 km/h);
- ☐ the lane limit lines are visible at least on one side;
- ☐ there are suitable visibility conditions;
- ☐ the road is straight or with wide radius bends;
- ☐ a suitable distance is kept from the vehicle in front;
- ☐ the direction indicator (for leaving the lane) is not active.



### IMPORTANT

**50)** Projecting loads on the roof of the vehicle may interfere with the correct operation of the camera. Before starting make sure the load is correctly positioned, in order not to cover the camera operating range.

**51)** If the windscreen must be replaced due to scratches, chipping or breakage, contact exclusively an Alfa Romeo Dealership. Do not replace the windscreen on your own, risk of malfunction! It is advisable to replace the windscreen if it is damaged in the area of the camera.

**52)** Do not tamper with nor operate on the camera. Do not close the openings in the aesthetic cover located under the interior rear view mirror. In the event of a failure of the camera, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

**53)** Do not cover the operating range of the camera with stickers or other objects. Also pay attention to other objects on the bonnet (e.g. a layer of snow) and make sure they do not interfere with the camera

**54)** The camera may have limited or absent operation due to weather conditions such as: heavy rain, hail, thick fog, heavy snow, formation of ice layers on the windscreen.

**55)** Camera operation may also be compromised by the presence of dust, condensation, dirt or ice on the windscreen, by traffic conditions (e.g. vehicles that are driving not aligned with yours, vehicle driving in a transverse or opposite way on the same lane, bend with a small radius of curvature), by road surface conditions and by driving conditions (e.g. off-road driving). Make sure the windscreen is always clean. Use specific detergents and clean cloths to avoid scratching the windscreen. The camera operation may also be limited or absent in some driving, traffic and road surface conditions.



ABC



## REAR BACK-UP CAMERA / DYNAMIC GRIDLINES



### DESCRIPTION

The Rear Back-up Camera is located on the boot, near the opening button, fig. 128.



128

0718650001EM



123)



56)

### Camera activation/deactivation

The function can be activated/deactivated on the Connect system.

#### Activating the device

To access the function, on the main menu select the following items in sequence: "Settings", "Driver assistance" and "Rear Back-up Camera". The following sub-menu appears:

- ☐ Active
- ☐ Switch-off delay;

### Grille.

Select "Activate" to activate the camera view on the Connect system display.

Every time reverse is engaged, the display of the Connect system, fig. 129, shows the area around the vehicle, as seen by the Rear Back-up Camera.



129

0718650002EM

### SYMBOLS AND MESSAGES ON THE DISPLAY

If activated, the grid is positioned on the image to highlight the width of the vehicle and the expected reversing path in accordance with the steering wheel position.

A superimposed central broken line indicates the centre of the vehicle to facilitate parking manoeuvres or tow hook alignment. The various coloured areas indicate the distance from the rear of the vehicle.

The table below shows the approximate

distances for each area fig. 129:

| Zone   | Distance from the rear of the vehicle |
|--------|---------------------------------------|
| Red    | 0 ÷ 11.8 in (30 cm)                   |
| Yellow | 11.8 in (30 cm) ÷ 3.3 ft (1 m)        |
| Green  | 3.3 ft (1 m) or more                  |

**IMPORTANT** When parking, take the utmost care over obstacles that may be above or under the camera range of the video cam.



### WARNING

**123)** Parking and other potentially dangerous manoeuvres are, however, always the driver's responsibility. While carrying out these manoeuvres, always make sure that no people (especially children) or animals are in the area concerned. The camera is an aid for the driver, but the driver must never allow his/her attention to lapse during potentially dangerous manoeuvres, even those executed at low speeds. Always keep a slow speed, so as to promptly brake in the case of obstacles.





## IMPORTANT

**56)** It is vital, for correct operation, that the camera is always kept clean and free from any mud, dirt, snow or ice. Be careful not to scratch or damage the camera while cleaning it. Avoid using dry, rough or hard cloths. The camera must be washed using clean water, with the addition of car shampoo if necessary. In washing stations which use steam or high-pressure jets, clean the camera quickly, keeping the nozzle more than 10 cm away from the sensors. Also, do not apply stickers to the camera.

## REFUELLING THE VEHICLE



Always stop the engine before refuelling.

### PETROL ENGINES

Only use unleaded petrol with a number of octanes (R.O.N.) not lower than 95 (EN228 specification).



**124|125|126)**

### DIESEL ENGINES

Only use automotive diesel fuel (EN590 and EN16734 specifications).

### Operation at low temperatures

If the outside temperature is very low, Diesel thickens due to the formation of paraffin clots with consequent defective operation of the fuel supply system.

In order to avoid these problems, different types of diesel are distributed according to the season: summer type, winter type and arctic type (cold, mountain areas).

In the event of refuelling with diesel which is unsuitable for the operating temperature, it is advisable to mix the diesel with a specific additive, introducing it to the tank before the anti-freeze and then the diesel.

## REFUELLING PROCEDURE

The fuel flap is unlocked when the central door locking system is released, while it is automatically locked when the central locking system is applied.

### Opening the flap

To refuel proceed as follows:

- ☐ open flap fig. 130, pressing on the point shown by the arrow;
- ☐ remove the closing cap;
- ☐ introduce the dispenser in the filler and refuel;



130

0720650001EM

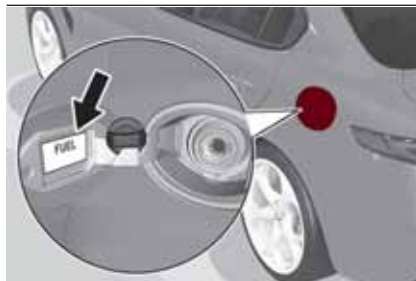
- ☐ after refuelling, before removing the dispenser, wait for at least 10 seconds in order for the fuel to flow inside the tank;
- ☐ then remove the dispenser from the filler, close the cap and then close the flap.

The refuelling procedure described previously is illustrated on the label applied inside the fuel flap.



ABC

The label also has the fuel type (UNLEADED FUEL = petrol; DIESEL = diesel fuel) and the symbol that certifies compliance with the EN228 (petrol), EN590 and EN16734 (diesel) standards, fig. 131.



131

0720650002EM

The symbols, shown below, make it easier to recognise the correct fuel type to use with your car.

Before refuelling, check the symbols (where provided) inside the fuel filler flap and compare them with the symbols shown on the fuel pump (where provided).



**E5:** unleaded petrol containing up to 2.7% (m/m) oxygen and with maximum

5.0% (V/V) ethanol compliant with the EN228 specification.

**E10:** unleaded petrol containing up to 3.7% (m/m) oxygen and with maximum 10.0% (V/V) ethanol compliant with the EN228 specification.



**B7:** diesel containing up to 7% (V/V) of FAME (Fatty Acid Methyl Esters) compliant with the EN590 specification.

**B10:** diesel containing up to 10% (V/V) of FAME (Fatty Acid Methyl Esters) compliant with the EN16734 specification.

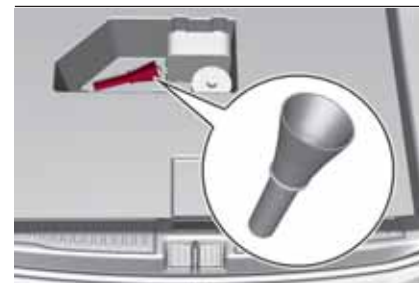
### Emergency diesel engine refuelling

(for versions/markets where provided)

Proceed as follows:

- ☐ open the luggage compartment and take out the dedicated adapter, located under the load platform fig. 132;
- ☐ open flap fig. 130, pressing on the point shown by the arrow;
- ☐ remove the closing cap;
- ☐ put the cap back in position;
- ☐ insert the adapter into the filler;
- ☐ when you have finished refuelling, remove the adapter, close the cap and then close the flap;

- ☐ finally put the adaptor back in the luggage compartment.



132

0720650005EM

### Emergency fuel flap opening

In the event of an emergency the fuel flap can be opened by operating from inside the luggage compartment.

Proceed as follows:

- ☐ open the tailgate and reach the emergency opening cable placed on the side of the fuel filler;
- ☐ pull the cord to unlock the fuel flap,
- ☐ open the fuel flap by pressing on it (see the previous instructions).

**IMPORTANT** If the filler compartment is washed with a high-pressure jet, keep it at a distance of at least 7.9 in (20 cm).



## WARNING

**124)** Do not apply any object/plug to the end of the filler which is not provided for the car. The use of non-compliant objects/plugs could cause a pressure increase inside the tank, resulting in dangerous situations.

**125)** Do not bring naked flames or lit cigarettes near to the fuel filler: fire risk. Keep your face away from the fuel filler to prevent breathing in harmful vapours.

**126)** Do not use a mobile phone near the refuelling pump: risk of fire.



ABC

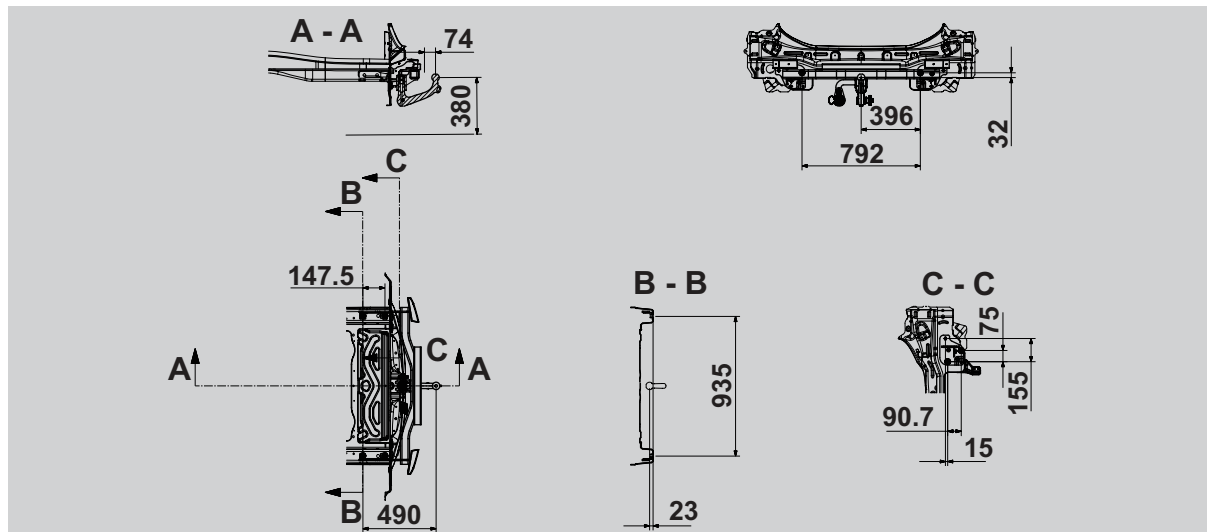
## TOWING TRAILERS

(where provided)



### ASSEMBLY SCHEDULE

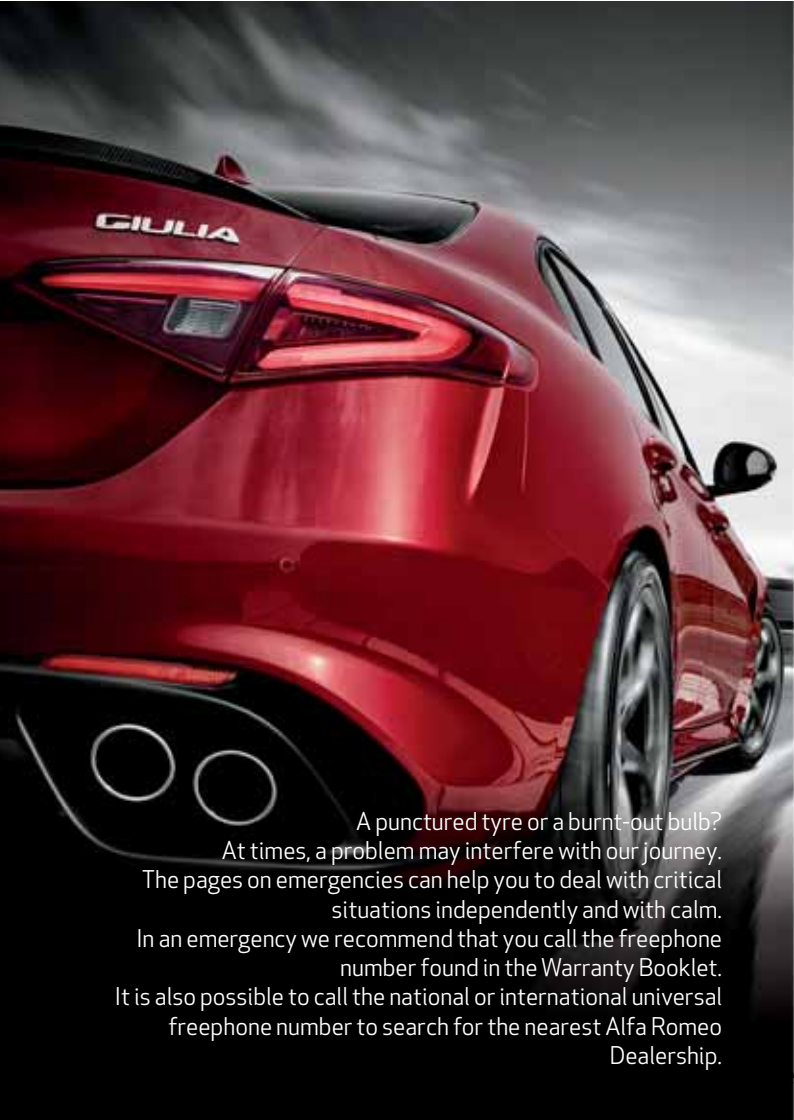
The tow hook structure must be secured to the body in the points shown in the fig. 133.



133

07226S0040EM

**IMPORTANT** Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership to install a tow hook.



**IN AN EMERGENCY**

HAZARD WARNING LIGHTS . . . . .132

REPLACING A BULB . . . . .132

REPLACING FUSES . . . . .137

TIRE REPAIR KIT . . . . .142

EMERGENCY STARTING . . . . .144

FUEL CUT-OFF SYSTEM . . . . .147

BROKEN-DOWN VEHICLE TOWING . . . . .147

TOWING THE VEHICLE . . . . .148

A punctured tyre or a burnt-out bulb?  
At times, a problem may interfere with our journey.  
The pages on emergencies can help you to deal with critical  
situations independently and with calm.  
In an emergency we recommend that you call the freephone  
number found in the Warranty Booklet.  
It is also possible to call the national or international universal  
freephone number to search for the nearest Alfa Romeo  
Dealership.

## HAZARD WARNING LIGHTS



### CONTROL



Press the fig. 134 button to switch the hazard warning lights on/off.

When the hazard warning lights are on, the and warning lights flash.

When you need to move away from the vehicle to look for help, the hazard warning lights will continue flashing even if the ignition device is in the STOP position.



134

08016S0001EM

**IMPORTANT** The use of hazard warning lights is governed by the highway code of the country you are driving in: comply with legal requirements.

## Emergency braking

The hazard lights are switched on and warning lights and appear on the instrument panel in case of emergency braking and according to the mode selected by the "Alfa DNA™" selector.

When the "Alfa DNA™" selector is in position "n" or "a", the activation threshold of the hazard warning lights is higher; on the other hand, in position "d" the sensitivity of the activation is lower than that in the "n" and "a" modes.

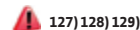
The lights switch off automatically when emergency braking ceases.



### IMPORTANT

**57)** A prolonged use of the hazard warning lights may discharge the battery.

## REPLACING A BULB



127) 128) 129)



58)

### GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS

- ☐ Before replacing a bulb check the contacts for oxidation;
- ☐ replace blown bulbs with others of the same type and power;
- ☐ after replacing a headlight bulb, always check its alignment;
- ☐ when a light is not working, check that the corresponding fuse is intact before changing the bulb. For the location of fuses, refer to the paragraph "If a fuse blows" in this chapter.

**IMPORTANT** In some particular climate conditions such as low temperature, humidity or after washing the car, a thin condensation layer may form on the internal surfaces of the front and rear headlights. This phenomenon will disappear after switching on the headlights

## TYPES OF BULBS

The vehicle is equipped with the following bulbs

**Glass bulbs (type A):** they are press-fitted. Pull to extract.

A



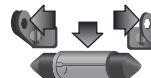
**Bayonet-type bulbs (type B):** to remove them from their holder, press the bulb and turn it anticlockwise, then extract it.

B



**Tubular bulbs (type C):** release them from their contacts to remove.

C



**Halogen bulbs (type D):** to remove the bulb, turn the connector to the side and pull it out.

D



**Halogen bulbs (type E):** to remove the bulb, turn it anticlockwise.

E



**Xenon gas discharge bulb (type F):** to remove the bulb, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

F



ABC

| Light bulbs                                                                        | Type  | Power  | Figure reference |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|--------|------------------|
| (1) Main beam headlights, front side lights/daylight running lights (DRL)          | H15   | 55/15W | D                |
| (1) Dipped headlamps                                                               | H7    | 55 W   | D                |
| (1) Front direction indicators                                                     | PY24W | 24W    | B                |
| (1) Fog lights                                                                     | H11   | 55 W   | E                |
| Main beam/dipped beam headlights (Xenon gas discharge)                             | D5S   | 25 W   | F                |
| Main beam/dipped beam headlights (Xenon gas discharge)                             | D3S   | 35 W   | F                |
| Sun visor light                                                                    | 1.5CP | 2.1W   | C                |
| Glove compartment light                                                            | W5W   | 4 W    | A                |
| Boot light                                                                         | W5W   | 5 W    | A                |
| Puddle lights (under door panel)                                                   | W5W   | 5 W    | A                |
| (1) Only for basic version headlight with halogen main beam/dipped beam headlights |       |        |                  |



## REPLACING AN EXTERNAL BULB

**IMPORTANT** Only replace the bulb when the engine is off. Also ensure that the engine is cold, to prevent the risk of burns.

### Front light cluster with main beam/dipped beam halogen headlights

#### Dipped headlights

To change the bulb of these lights, proceed as follows:

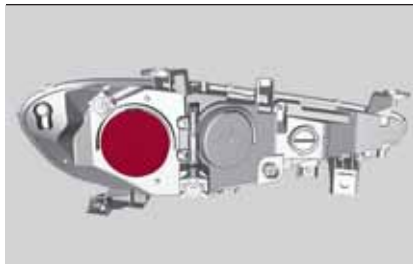
- ❑ remove the top cover from the wheel arch by unscrewing the two fixing screws fig. 135;



135

08026S0001EM

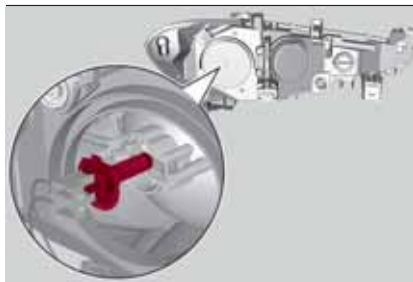
- ❑ remove the cover fig. 136;



136

08026S0002EM

- ❑ remove the bulb/connector assembly from the headlight body fig. 137;



137

08026S0003EM

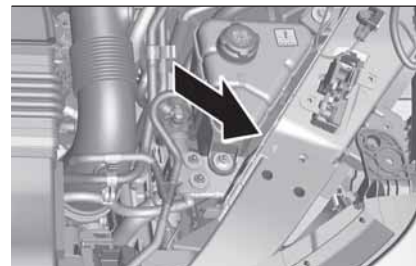
- ❑ remove the bulb by sliding it off the connector;
- ❑ install the new bulb, making sure it is correctly inserted in the connector;
- ❑ then insert the bulb/connector assembly in the housing on the headlight body and make sure that it is locked correctly;

- ❑ remount the lid and cover, tightening the fixing bolts.

#### Main beam headlights

To change the bulb of these lights, proceed as follows:

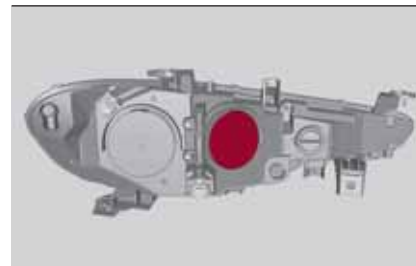
- ❑ operating inside the engine compartment fig. 138;



138

08026S00023EM

- ❑ remove the cover fig. 139;



139

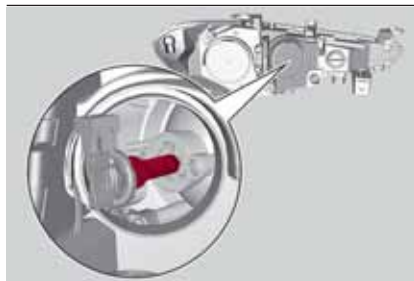
08026S0004EM

- ❑ turn the bulb, bulb holder and connector assembly anticlockwise and



ABC

then slide it off the headlight body  
fig. 140;



140

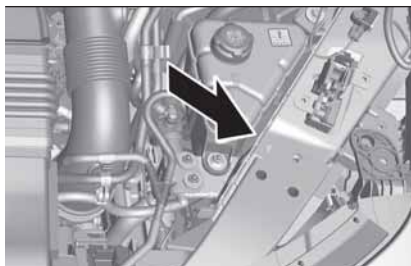
08026S0005EM

- ☐ remove the bulb by sliding it off the bulb holder;
- ☐ install the new bulb, making sure it is correctly inserted in the bulb holder;
- ☐ then insert the bulb, bulb holder and connector assembly in the housing on the headlight body and turn it clockwise, making sure that it is locked correctly;
- ☐ refit the protective cover.

### **Direction indicators**

To change the bulb of these lights, proceed as follows:

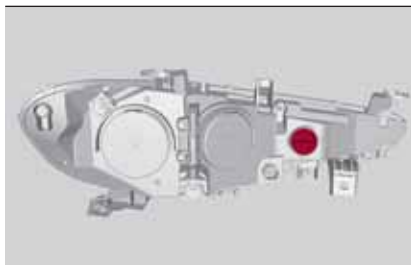
- ☐ operating inside the engine compartment fig. 141;



141

08026S0023EM

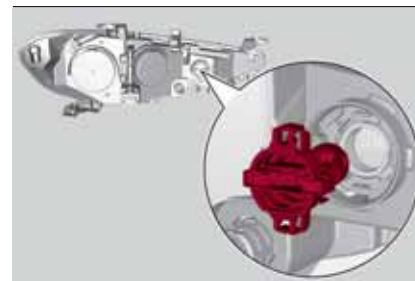
- ☐ remove cover by turning it fig. 142;



142

08026S0006EM

- ☐ release the bulb, bulb holder and connector assembly and then slide it off the headlight body fig. 143;



143

08026S0007EM

- ☐ remove the bulb by sliding it off the bulb holder;
- ☐ install the new bulb, making sure it is correctly inserted in the bulb holder;
- ☐ then insert the bulb, bulb holder and connector assembly in the housing on the headlight body and turn it clockwise, making sure that it is locked correctly;
- ☐ refit the protective cover.

### **Front fog lights**

To replace the bulbs, proceed as follows:

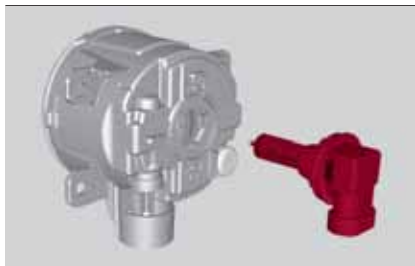
- ☐ remove the lower cover from the wheel arch by unscrewing the two fixing screws fig. 144;



144

08026S0021EM

- ❑ pull out the bulb-bulb holder unit from the headlight body by turning it anticlockwise fig. 145;



145

08026S0022EM

- ❑ remove the bulb by sliding it off the bulb holder
- ❑ install the new bulb, making sure it is correctly inserted in the bulb holder;
- ❑ then insert the bulb, bulb holder and connector assembly in the housing on the headlight body and turn it clockwise, making sure that it is locked correctly;

- ❑ refit the cover by tightening the two fixing screws.

### Front light cluster with main beam/dipped beam Xenon gas discharge headlights

To replace the bulbs of the main beam headlights/dipped headlights contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership



#### WARNING

**127)** Before replacing the bulb, wait for the exhaust ducts to cool down: DANGER OF SCALDING!

**128)** Modifications or repairs to the electric system that are not carried out properly or do not take the system technical specifications into account can cause malfunctions leading to the risk of fire.

**129)** Halogen bulbs contain pressurised gas, in the case of breakage they may burst causing glass fragments to be projected outwards.



#### IMPORTANT

**58)** Halogen bulbs must be handled holding the metallic part only. Touching the transparent part of the bulb with your fingers may reduce the intensity of the emitted light and even reduce the lifespan of the bulb. In the event of accidental contact, wipe the bulb with a cloth moistened with alcohol and let the bulb dry.

## REPLACING FUSES



### INTRODUCTION



130) 131) 132) 133) 134)



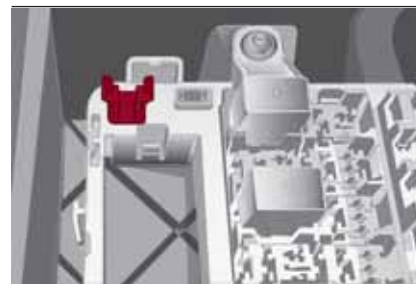
59) 60)

Fuses protect the electrical system: they intervene (blow) in the event of a failure or improper action on the system.

### Fuse extracting pliers

To replace a fuse, use the pliers hooked to the boot fusebox cover fig. 146.

Grab the pliers from the upper tabs, press them and extract the pliers pulling upwards.



146

08036S0053EM

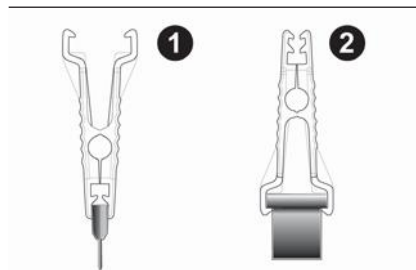
The pliers fig. 147 have two different ends, specifically designed to remove the different types of fuses present in the vehicle.

- ❑ 1: MINI fuse;



ABC

## ❑ 2: J-CASE fuse.



I47

0803650005EM

After use, refit the pliers in position, proceeding as follows:

- ❑ grasp the pliers from the upper tabs;
- ❑ press the pliers in their housing, pushing downwards, until they click into place.

## FUSE LOCATION

The fuses, which can be replaced by the user, are grouped in two boxes below the passenger side foot board and inside the boot.

## CONTROL UNIT UNDER PASSENGER SIDE FOOTBOARD

To access the fuses, proceed as follows:

- ❑ lift the upper end of the footboard 1 fig. 148 on the passenger side, pulling it to release the 2 buttons;



I48

0803650010EM

- ❑ remove the panel 2 fig. 149, extracting it downward, after unscrewing the two fixing hooks;



I49

0803650011EM

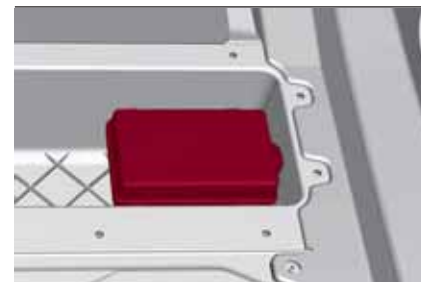
- ❑ the fuses are freely accessible on the control unit.

The number identifying the electrical component corresponding to each fuse is shown on the control unit cover.

## LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

To access the fuses, proceed as follows:

- ❑ lift the load carrying plane;
- ❑ remove the control unit cover fig. 150;



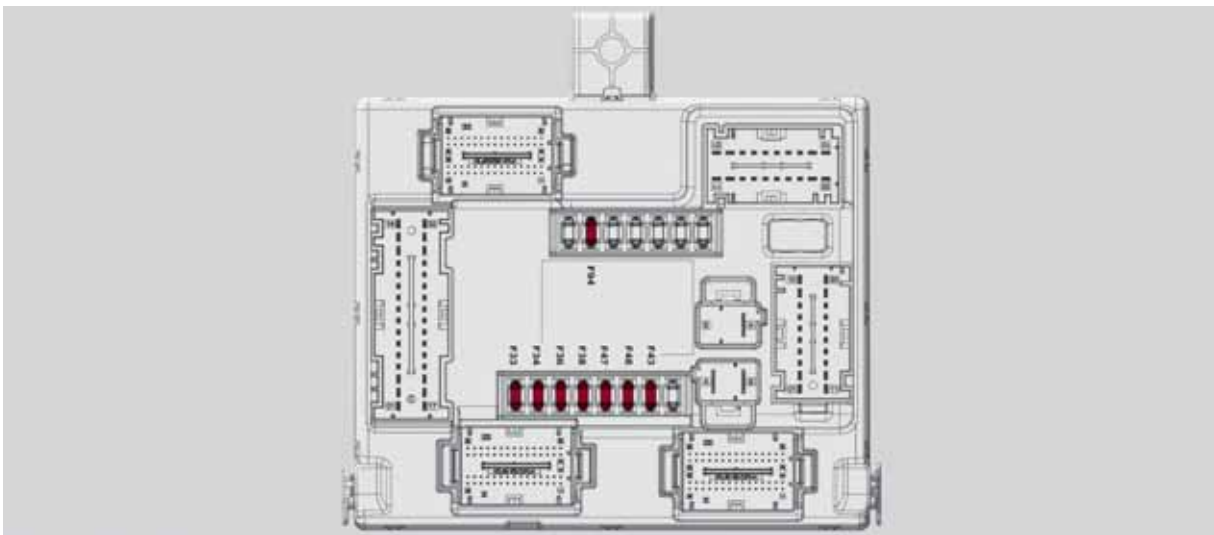
I50

0803650014EM

The number identifying the electrical component corresponding to each fuse is shown on the cover.

After replacing a fuse, make sure that you have closed cover correctly.

CONTROL UNIT UNDER PASSENGER SIDE FOOTBOARD



151

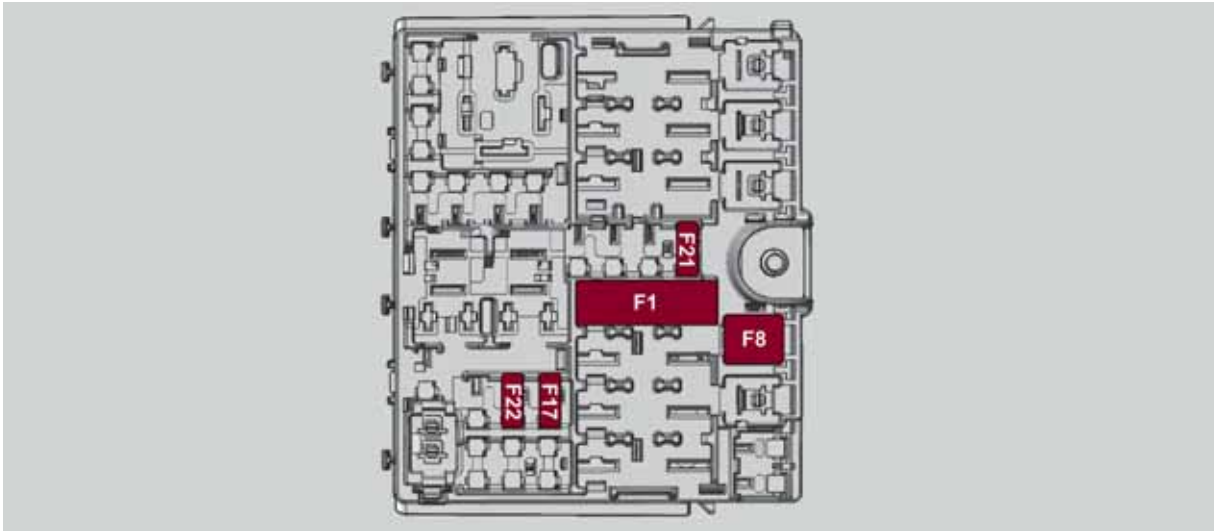
0803650013EM

| FUNCTION                                                                                                            | FUSE | AMPERE |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|--------|
| Front electric window (driver side)                                                                                 | F33  | 25     |
| Front electric window (passenger side)                                                                              | F34  | 25     |
| Power supply for Connect system, Climate Control system, Alarm, Electric door mirror folding, EOBD system, USB port | F36  | 15     |
| Power Lock Device (Driver side door unlocking - where provided)/Door unlocking, Central locking                     | F38  | 20     |
| Windscreen washer pump                                                                                              | F43  | 20     |



| FUNCTION                               | FUSE | AMPERE |
|----------------------------------------|------|--------|
| Rear left electric window              | F47  | 25     |
| Rear right electric window             | F48  | 25     |
| Heater rear window coil, cigar lighter | F94  | 15     |

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX



152

0803650015EM

| FUNCTION                       | FUSE | AMPERE |
|--------------------------------|------|--------|
| Tow hook module (TTM)          | F1   | 40     |
| Hi-Fi system                   | F8   | 30     |
| KL15/a USB Recharge (C070)     | F17  | 7.5    |
| I-Drive/USB/ AUX port          | F21  | 10     |
| KL15/a 12V Power outlet (R053) | F22  | 20     |



ABC



## WARNING

**130)** Never replace a fuse with another with a higher amp rating; DANGER OF FIRE.

**131)** Before replacing a fuse, make sure that the ignition device is at STOP and that all devices are switched off and/or disconnected.

**132)** Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership if a safety system (airbags, brakes), transmission system (engine, gearbox) or steering system general protection fuse blows.

**133)** If a fuse blows again, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

**134)** If a general protective fuse (MAXI-FUSE, MEGA-FUSE, MIDI-FUSE) blows, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.



## IMPORTANT

**59)** Never replace a fuse with metal wires or anything else.

**60)** If it is necessary to wash the engine compartment, take care not to directly hit the fuse box and the window wiper motors with the water jet.

## TIRE REPAIR KIT

(where provided)



## DESCRIPTION



**135) 136) 137) 138) 139) 140) 141) 142) 143)**



**61)**



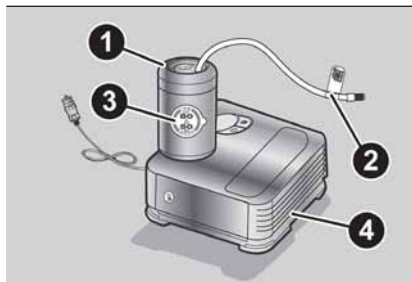
**3)**

The Tire Repair Kit is located in the boot, inside a specific container.

To access the Tire Repair Kit, open the boot, lift the load platform.

The Tire Repair Kit includes also:

☐ one tank 1 fig. 153 containing the sealing fluid, provided with: filler tube 2 and adhesive label 3 with the writing "Max. 50 mph (80 km/h)", to be attached in a position easily visible to the driver (eg. on the dashboard) after repairing the tyre;



153

08066S0002EM

- ☐ compressor 4 complete with pressure gauge and connectors;
- ☐ an instruction leaflet, to refer to for prompt and correct use of the Tire Repair Kit and that must be then given to the personnel dealing with the tyre treated with sealant;
- ☐ a pair of protective gloves;
- ☐ some adaptors, for inflating different elements.

**IMPORTANT** The sealing fluid is effective with external temperatures of between -40°F (-40°C) and 122°F (+50°C). The sealing fluid has an expiry date.

## INFLATION PROCEDURE

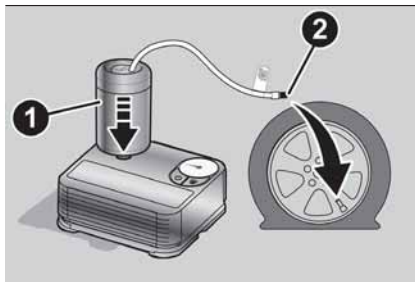


**135) 136) 138) 139) 140) 141) 142) 143)**

Proceed as follows:

- ☐ engage the electric parking brake.
- ☐ Insert the tank 1 fig. 154 containing the sealing liquid in the proper compressor holder, pressing down hard. Unscrew the tyre valve cap, take out the filler hose 2 and tighten the ring nut on the tyre valve;

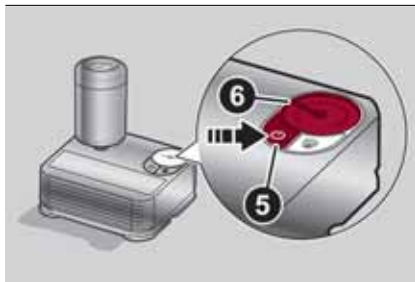




154

08066S0004EM

- ❑ make sure that switch 5 fig. 155 of the compressor is in position 0 (OFF);



155

08066S0005EM

- ❑ insert the plug into the socket on the central tunnel, start the engine;
- ❑ start the compressor, placing the switch 5 fig. 155 to position I (ON);
- ❑ inflate the tyre to the pressure indicated in the "Rims and Tyres" paragraph (see "Technical data" chapter). In order to obtain a more precise reading,

check the pressure value on pressure gauge 6 fig. 155 with the compressor off;

- ❑ if after 15 minutes pressure is not at least 1.8 bar (26 psi), disengage the compressor from the valve and power socket, then move the vehicle forwards approx. five tyre turns in order to distribute the sealing fluid inside the tyre evenly, then repeat the inflation operation;

- ❑ if you still cannot obtain a pressure of at least 1,8 bar (26 psi) within 15 minutes from the compressor switching on, do not drive off and contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership;

- ❑ after having driven for about 5 mph (8 km), stop, engage the electric parking brake and recheck the tyre pressure;
- ❑ if the pressure is less than 1.8 bar (26 psi), do not go back into gear but see an Alfa Romeo dealer;
- ❑ if a pressure value of at least 1.8 bar (26 psi) is detected, restore the correct pressure (with engine running and electric parking brake), resume driving immediately and drive with great care to an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

## SEALANT BOTTLE REPLACEMENT

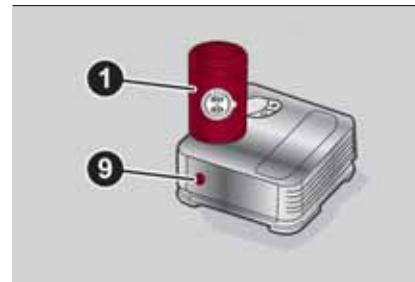
**IMPORTANT** Only use original cartridges, which can be purchased at an Alfa Romeo dealership.

Proceed as follows:

- ❑ Remove the tank 1 fig. 156 pressing

the unhooking button 9;

- ❑ insert the new tank pressing it downwards hard.



156

08066S0009EM



## WARNING

**135)** Punctures on the sides of the tire may not be repaired. Do not use the Tire Repair kit if the tyre was damaged as a result of being used when underinflated.

**136)** Wear the protective gloves provided with the Tire Repair kit.

**137)** Apply the adhesive label where it can be easily seen by the driver as a reminder that the tyre has been treated with the Tire Repair Kit. Drive carefully, particularly on bends. Do not exceed 80 km/h. Avoid sudden acceleration or braking.

**138)** You must always indicate that the tyre was repaired using the Tire Repair Kit. Give the booklet to the technicians who will be handling the tyre that was treated using the Tire Repair Kit.



ABC

**139)** Repairs are not possible in the case of damage to the wheel rim (bad groove distortion causing air loss). Do not remove foreign bodies (screws or nails) from the tyre.

**140)** Never operate the compressor for longer than 20 consecutive minutes. Risk of overheating. The Tire Repair Kit is not suitable for definitive repairs, so the repaired tyres may only be used temporarily.

**141)** As required by current regulations, the information on chemical substances for the protection of human health and the environment and on the safe use of the sealing fluid are on the packaging label. Compliance with the indications on the label is an essential condition to ensure the safety and the effectiveness of the product.

Remember to carefully read the label before use; the user of the product is responsible for any damages caused by improper use. The sealing fluid has an expiry date. Replace the bottle if the sealant has expired.

**142)** If the pressure falls below 1.8 bar, do not drive any further: the Tire Repair Kit cannot guarantee proper seal because the tyre is too damaged. Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

**143)** The Tire Repair Kit provide a temporary repair, therefore the tyre must be examined and repaired by a specialist as soon as possible. The sealant is suitable for use at temperatures in the range from -40°C to +50°C.



### IMPORTANT

**61)** In the event of a puncture caused by foreign bodies, the kit may be used to repair tyres showing damage on the tyre tread up to max. 6mm diameter.



### IMPORTANT

**3)** Dispose of the bottle and the sealant liquid properly. Have them disposed of in compliance with national and local regulations.

## EMERGENCY STARTING



If the battery is flat, a jump starting can be performed using the battery and the cables of another vehicle, or using an auxiliary battery. In all cases, the battery used must have a capacity equal to or a little higher than the flat one.

Jump starting may be dangerous if carried out incorrectly: carefully follow the procedures described below.



**62)**

### IMPORTANT NOTES

Do not use an auxiliary battery or any other source of external supply with a voltage above 12 V: the battery, the starter, the alternator and the electrical system of the vehicle could be damaged.

Do not attempt jump starting if the battery is frozen. The battery could break and explode!

### REMOTE BATTERY CONNECTION POLES

To facilitate the operation, the remote poles of the battery for the jump starting can be found in the engine compartment: the battery, on the other hand, is placed in the luggage compartment.

The negative terminal (-) fig. 157 fig. 8 is positioned next to the right bonnet lock.



157

08076S0006EM

The positive pole (+) can be accessed by removing the cover fig. 158



158

08076S0007EM

open protective flap fig. 159.



159

08076S0002EM

The pole is shown in fig. 160.



160

08076S0001EM

To carry out the operation, you need to have the correct cables to connect the auxiliary battery to the remote poles of the flat battery. Usually, these cables have terminals at the ends and are identified by different sheath colours (red = positive, black = negative).

## JUMP STARTING



144) 145) 146)

Proceed as follows:

- ☐ switch off all electrical devices in the vehicle;
- ☐ engage the parking brake, move the lever to P (Park), for versions equipped with automatic transmission, or neutral, for versions with manual gearbox, then set the ignition device to STOP;
- ☐ should you be using the battery of another vehicle, park the other vehicle within the range of the cables used for the connection, operate the parking brake and ensure that its ignition is off.

**IMPORTANT** If the auxiliary battery is installed on another vehicle, check that there is no accidental contact of metal parts between the two vehicles, since an earth connection may result, with the risk of serious injury to any people who may be nearby.

**IMPORTANT** If the procedure below is carried out incorrectly, it can cause severe injury to people or damage the recharging system of one or both vehicles. Carefully follow the instructions given below.



ABC

## Cable connection



63)

Proceed as follows to carry out a jump starting:

- ❑ connect a terminal on the end of the positive cable from the remote positive pole (+) of the car with flat battery;
- ❑ connect the terminal on the opposite end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) pole of the auxiliary battery;
- ❑ connect a negative cable end terminal to the negative (-) pole of the auxiliary battery;
- ❑ connect the terminal on the opposite end of the negative (-) cable to the earth point (-) on the vehicle with the battery flat;
- ❑ start the engine of the car with an auxiliary battery, let it run for some minutes at idle and then start the engine of the car with flat battery. In case a portable battery is used, before starting the vehicle, wait a few seconds after completing the connection.

## Cable disconnection

Once the engine is started, remove the connection cables in reverse sequence, as shown below:

- ❑ disconnect the negative cable end terminal (-) from the earth point (-) of the car with flat battery;
- ❑ disconnect the terminal on the opposite end of the negative cable from

the negative (-) pole of the auxiliary battery;

- ❑ disconnect the terminal on the opposite end of the positive (+) cable from the positive (+) pole of the auxiliary battery;
- ❑ disconnect the terminal on the end of the positive cable from the remote positive pole (+) of the car with flat battery.



### WARNING

**144)** Do not get too close to the radiator cooling fan: the electric fan may start; danger of injury. Scarves, ties and other loose clothing might be pulled by moving parts.

**145)** Remove any metal objects (e.g. rings, watches, bracelets), that might cause an accidental electrical contact and cause serious injury.

**146)** The batteries contain acid that can burn skin or eyes. Batteries produce hydrogen, which is easily flammable and explosive. Thus keep away flames or devices which may cause sparks.



### IMPORTANT

**62)** Never use a fast battery-charger to start the engine as this could damage the electronic systems of your vehicle, particularly the ignition and engine fuel supply control units.

**63)** Do not connect the cable to the negative terminal (-) of the flat battery. The following spark could lead to battery explosion and cause serious harm. Only use the specific earth point; do not use any other exposed metallic part.

## FUEL CUT-OFF SYSTEM

### DESCRIPTION

Depending on the type and violence of the impact, the control unit of the ORC occupant protection systems determines whether to activate the airbags and the front seatbelt pretensioners and whether to immediately interrupt the current from the batteries to the supply pumps and to the devices that operate the engine. The power from the battery is interrupted by "skipping" the pyrotechnic fuse placed on the fuse box next to the positive pole of the battery.

When the fuse is "skipped", only some services, necessary for the safety of the vehicle (eg: door locks, anti-theft device, etc.), remain powered.

**IMPORTANT** After the impact, carefully check the vehicle for fuel leaks, for instance in the engine compartment, under the vehicle or near the tank area.

**IMPORTANT** Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the system checked.

## BROKEN-DOWN VEHICLE TOWING



### REAR WHEEL DRIVE (RWD) VERSIONS

It is recommended to tow the vehicle with all four wheels lifted from the ground on the platform of a roadside assistance vehicle.

If a breakdown truck with platform is not available, the vehicle must be towed with the rear wheels LIFTED from the ground (using a trailer or special equipment allowing lifting of the rear wheels).

**IMPORTANT** Towing vehicles without complying with the above mentioned prescriptions can cause serious damage to the vehicle.

## FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE (AWD) VERSIONS

It is recommended to tow the vehicle with all four wheels lifted from the ground on the platform of a roadside assistance vehicle.

**IMPORTANT** Avoid lifting the front (or rear) wheels only, using a trailer or vehicle that allows lifting the wheels of one axle only. Lifting the front (or rear) wheels only while towing might damage the transmission or the transfer unit.

**IMPORTANT** If a vehicle is towed without complying with the above requirements, the transmission and/or the transfer unit might be seriously damaged. Damage due to incorrect towing is not covered by warranty.



ABC

## TOWING THE VEHICLE



147) 148)

In order to be able to tow the vehicle, which has been in an accident or has broken down, on the road surface and only for short distances, a tow hook is provided in the tools container inside the boot.

Proceed as follows to use the tow hook:

☐ unhook the cap fig. 161 on the front or rear fender (where provided) fig. 161, pressing on the upper part;



161

08136S0001EM

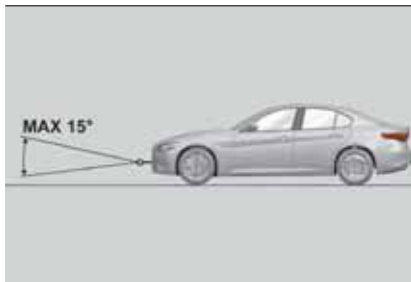


162

08136S0003EM

- ☐ take the tow hook from its housing in the boot and carefully clean the threaded housing on the vehicle before using it;
- ☐ tighten the vehicle's tow hook in its place for about 11 turns.

**IMPORTANT** The largest work angle of the cable to fix on the tow hook must not exceed 15°, as shown in fig. 163.



163

08136S0002EM



### WARNING

**147)** Move the ignition device to ON and then to STOP, without opening the door.

**148)** The brake servo and the electromechanical power steering will not work while the vehicle is being towed. You will therefore need to apply more force on the brake pedal and steering wheel. Do not use flexible ropes when towing, and avoid jerky movements. During towing, make sure that the trailer hitch does not damage any components it is touching. When towing the car, you must comply with all specific traffic regulations and adopt an appropriate driving behaviour. Do not start the engine while towing the car. Before tightening the ring, clean the threaded housing thoroughly. Make sure that the ring is fully screwed into the housing before towing the car.



## SERVICING AND CARE

|                                |     |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| SCHEDULED SERVICING . . . . .  | 150 |
| ENGINE COMPARTMENT . . . . .   | 157 |
| BATTERY RECHARGING . . . . .   | 163 |
| SERVICING PROCEDURES . . . . . | 164 |
| LIFTING THE VEHICLE . . . . .  | 166 |
| WHEELS AND TYRES . . . . .     | 166 |
| BODY . . . . .                 | 168 |

Correct servicing permits the performance of the vehicle to be maintained over time, as well as limited running costs and safeguarding the efficiency of the safety systems.  
This chapter explains how.



## SCHEDULED SERVICING

Correct servicing is crucial for guaranteeing a long life for the vehicle under the best conditions.

For this reason, Alfa Romeo has planned a series of checks and maintenance operations at fixed distance intervals and, for versions/markets, where provided, at fixed time intervals, as described in the Service Schedule.

Before each service, it is always necessary to carefully follow the instructions in the Scheduled Servicing Plan (e.g. periodically check level of fluids, tyre pressure, etc.).

Scheduled Servicing is offered by an Alfa Romeo Dealership according to a set time schedule. If, during each operation, in addition to the ones scheduled, the need arises for further replacements or repairs, these may be carried out with the owner's explicit consent only.

IMPORTANT Scheduled Servicing operations are required by the Manufacturer. Failure to have them carried out may invalidate the warranty. It is advisable to inform the Alfa Romeo Dealership of any small operating irregularities without waiting for the next service.

## PERIODIC CHECKS

Every year or every **620 mi (1,000 km)** or before long trips check and, if necessary, top up:

- ☐ engine coolant level;
- ☐ brake fluid level (if insufficient, see an Alfa Romeo dealership as soon as possible);
- ☐ windscreen washer fluid level;
- ☐ tyre inflation pressure and condition;
- ☐ operation of lighting system (headlights, direction indicators, hazard warning lights, etc.);
- ☐ operation of screen washing/wiping system and positioning/wear of wiper blades.

Every **1860 mi (3,000 km)**, check and top up if required: engine oil level.

## DEMANDING USE OF THE CAR

If the vehicle is used in one of the following conditions:

- ☐ dusty roads;
- ☐ short, repeated journeys (less than 4.3-5 mi (7-8 km)) at sub-zero outside temperatures;
- ☐ engine often idling or driving long distances at low speeds or long periods of inactivity;
- ☐ in the event of a long period of inactivity;

the following checks must be carried out more often than indicated in the Scheduled Service Plan:

- ☐ check front and rear disc brake pad condition and wear;
- ☐ check cleanliness of bonnet and boot locks, cleanliness and lubrication of linkage;
- ☐ visually inspect conditions of: engine, gearbox, transmission, pipes and hoses (exhaust/fuel system/brakes) and rubber elements (gaiters/sleeves/bushes, etc.);
- ☐ check battery charge and battery fluid level (electrolyte);
- ☐ visually inspect conditions of the accessory drive belts;
- ☐ check and, if necessary, change engine oil and replace oil filter;
- ☐ check and, if necessary, replace pollen filter;
- ☐ check and, if necessary, replace air cleaner;
- ☐ check and, if necessary, replace the Bad Fuel fuel filter (where available).



## SERVICE SCHEDULE (2.0 T4 MAir petrol engine versions)

The checks listed in the Scheduled Service Plan, after reaching 90,000 mi (150,000 km)/10 years, must be cyclically repeated starting from the first interval, thus following the same intervals as before.

| Thousands of miles                                                                                                                                                                  | 9  | 18 | 27 | 36 | 45 | 54 | 63  | 72  | 81  | 90  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Thousands of kilometres                                                                                                                                                             | 15 | 30 | 45 | 60 | 75 | 90 | 105 | 120 | 135 | 150 |
| Years                                                                                                                                                                               | 1  | 2  | 3  | 4  | 5  | 6  | 7   | 8   | 9   | 10  |
| Check battery charge status with the proper instrument                                                                                                                              | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
| Check tyre condition/wear and adjust pressure, if necessary.<br>Check quick tyre repair kit recharge conditions/expiry date (if provided)                                           | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
| Check operation of lighting system (headlights, direction indicators, hazard warning lights, boot, passenger compartment, glove compartment, instrument panel warning lights, etc.) | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
| Check and, if necessary, top up fluid levels (1)                                                                                                                                    | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
| Check exhaust emissions/smokiness                                                                                                                                                   | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
| Check the supply/engine control and emissions systems operation using the diagnosis equipment                                                                                       | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
| Check engine oil decay using the diagnosis equipment (2)                                                                                                                            | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
| Visually inspect conditions of: exterior bodywork, underbody protection, pipes and hoses (exhaust, fuel system, brakes), rubber elements (gaiters, sleeves, bushes, etc.)           |    | ●  |    | ●  |    | ●  |     | ●   |     | ●   |
| Check windscreen wiper blade position/wear                                                                                                                                          | ●  |    | ●  |    | ●  |    | ●   |     | ●   |     |

(1) Always only use the liquids shown in the handbook for topping up after having checked that the system is not damaged.

(2) If the vehicle diagnostics shows that the oil quality is lower than 20%, changing the engine oil and filter is advised.



ABC

| Thousands of miles                                                                                 | 9   | 18 | 27 | 36 | 45 | 54 | 63  | 72  | 81  | 90  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Thousands of kilometres                                                                            | 15  | 30 | 45 | 60 | 75 | 90 | 105 | 120 | 135 | 150 |
| Years                                                                                              | 1   | 2  | 3  | 4  | 5  | 6  | 7   | 8   | 9   | 10  |
| Check operation of windscreen washer system and adjust jets if necessary                           | ●   |    | ●  |    | ●  |    | ●   |     | ●   |     |
| Check cleanliness of bonnet and luggage compartment locks, cleanliness and lubrication of linkage  |     | ●  |    | ●  |    | ●  |     | ●   |     | ●   |
| Visually inspect conditions and wear of front disc brake pads and operation of pad wear indicators | ●   | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
| Visually inspect conditions and wear of rear disc brake pads and operation of pad wear indicators  | ●   | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
| Visually inspect the condition and tensioning of the accessory drive belt(s)                       | ●   | ●  | ●  |    | ●  | ●  | ●   |     | ●   | ●   |
| Change engine oil and replace oil filter                                                           | (3) |    |    |    |    |    |     |     |     |     |
| Replace Transfer Case oil (for AWD versions)                                                       |     |    |    |    |    |    |     | ●   |     |     |
| Spark plug replacement                                                                             |     |    |    | ●  |    |    |     | ●   |     |     |
| Replace accessory drive belt/s                                                                     | (4) |    |    |    |    |    |     |     |     |     |
| Replace air cleaner cartridge (5)                                                                  |     |    | ●  |    |    | ●  |     |     | ●   |     |
| Replace supplementary fuel filter (where present)                                                  | ●   | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |

(3) The actual interval for changing engine oil and replacing the engine oil filter depends on the vehicle usage conditions and is signalled by the warning light or message in the instrument panel. Anyway, it must never exceed 1 year.

(4) Areas that are not dusty: recommended maximum mileage 36,000 mi (60,000 km). The belt must be replaced every 4 years, regardless of distance travelled. Dusty areas and/or heavy conditions (cold climates, urban driving, long periods of idling): the recommended maximum distance is 18,000 mi (30,000 km). The belt must be replaced every 2 years, regardless of distance travelled.

(5) If the vehicle is used in dusty areas, this cleaner must be replaced every 9,000 mi (15,000 km).

| Thousands of miles                            | 9   | 18 | 27 | 36 | 45 | 54 | 63  | 72  | 81  | 90  |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Thousands of kilometres                       | 15  | 30 | 45 | 60 | 75 | 90 | 105 | 120 | 135 | 150 |
| Years                                         | 1   | 2  | 3  | 4  | 5  | 6  | 7   | 8   | 9   | 10  |
| Change the brake fluid                        | (6) |    |    |    |    |    |     |     |     |     |
| Replace the passenger compartment cleaner (5) | 0   | ●  | 0  | ●  | 0  | ●  | 0   | ●   | 0   | ●   |

(6) The brake fluid replacement has to be done every two years, irrespective of the mileage.

(5) If the vehicle is used in dusty areas, this cleaner must be replaced every 9,000 mi (15,000 km).

(o) Recommended operations

(●) Mandatory operations



ABC

**SCHEDULED SERVICING PLAN (2.2 JTD diesel engine versions)**

The checks listed in the Scheduled Servicing Plan, after reaching 120,000 mi (200,000 km)/10 years, must be cyclically repeated starting from the first interval, thus following the same intervals as before.

| Thousands of miles                                                                                                                                                                           | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 60  | 72  | 84  | 96  | 108 | 120 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Thousands of kilometres                                                                                                                                                                      | 20 | 40 | 60 | 80 | 100 | 120 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 |
| Years                                                                                                                                                                                        | 1  | 2  | 3  | 4  | 5   | 6   | 7   | 8   | 9   | 10  |
| Check battery charge status with the proper instrument                                                                                                                                       | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
| Check tyre condition/wear and adjust pressure, if necessary.<br>Check quick tyre repair kit recharge conditions/expiry date<br>(where provided)                                              | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
| Check operation of lighting system (headlights, direction<br>indicators, hazard warning lights, boot, passenger<br>compartment, glove compartment, instrument panel warning<br>lights, etc.) | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
| Check and, if necessary, top up fluid levels (1)                                                                                                                                             | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
| Check exhaust emissions                                                                                                                                                                      | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
| Use the diagnosis socket to check supply/engine<br>management systems operation, emissions and, for<br>versions/markets, where provided, engine oil degradation (2)                          | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
| Visually inspect conditions of: exterior bodywork, underbody<br>protection, pipes and hoses (exhaust, fuel system, brakes),<br>rubber elements (gaiters, sleeves, bushes, etc.)              | ●  |    | ●  |    | ●   |     | ●   |     | ●   |     |
| Check windscreen wiper blade position/wear                                                                                                                                                   | ●  |    | ●  |    | ●   |     | ●   |     | ●   |     |

(1) Always only use the liquids shown in the handbook for topping up after having checked that the system is not damaged.

(2) If the vehicle diagnostics shows that the oil quality is lower than 20%, changing the engine oil and filter is advised.

| Thousands of miles                                                                                 | 12  | 24 | 36 | 48 | 60  | 72  | 84  | 96  | 108 | 120 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|----|----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Thousands of kilometres                                                                            | 20  | 40 | 60 | 80 | 100 | 120 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 |
| Years                                                                                              | 1   | 2  | 3  | 4  | 5   | 6   | 7   | 8   | 9   | 10  |
| Check operation of the windscreen wiper/washer system and adjust jets, if necessary                | ●   |    | ●  |    | ●   |     | ●   |     | ●   |     |
| Check cleanliness of bonnet and luggage compartment locks, cleanliness and lubrication of linkage  |     | ●  |    | ●  |     | ●   |     | ●   |     | ●   |
| Visually inspect conditions and wear of front disc brake pads and operation of pad wear indicators | ●   | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
| Visually inspect conditions and wear of rear disc brake pads and operation of pad wear indicators  | ●   | ●  | ●  | ●  | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
| Visually inspect the condition and tensioning of the accessory drive belt(s)                       |     |    | ●  |    |     |     |     | ●   |     |     |
| Visually inspect the toothed timing drive belt                                                     |     |    | ●  |    |     |     |     | ●   |     |     |
| Change engine oil and replace oil filter                                                           | (3) |    |    |    |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| Change the Transfer Case oil (for AWD versions)                                                    |     |    |    |    |     | ●   |     |     |     |     |
| Replace engine oil centrifuge filter (blow-by)                                                     |     |    |    |    | ●   |     |     |     |     | ●   |
| Replace accessory drive belt/s                                                                     | (4) |    |    |    |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| Replace the toothed timing drive belt                                                              | (4) |    |    |    |     |     |     |     |     |     |

(3) The actual interval for changing engine oil and replacing the engine oil filter depends on the vehicle usage conditions and is signalled by the warning light or message in the instrument panel. In any case it must not exceed 2 years. If the car is used mainly for urban driving or fuel not strictly compliant with European Specifications EN590 is used, it is advisable to change the oil and replace the filter every year.

(4) Areas that are not dusty: recommended maximum mileage 60,000 mi (100,000 km). The belt must be replaced every 5 years, regardless of distance travelled. Dusty areas and/or heavy conditions (cold climates, urban driving, long periods of idling): the recommended maximum distance is 36,000 mi (60,000 km). The belt must be replaced every 3 years, regardless of distance travelled.



ABC

| Thousands of miles                        | 12  | 24 | 36 | 48 | 60  | 72  | 84  | 96  | 108 | 120 |
|-------------------------------------------|-----|----|----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Thousands of kilometres                   | 20  | 40 | 60 | 80 | 100 | 120 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 |
| Years                                     | 1   | 2  | 3  | 4  | 5   | 6   | 7   | 8   | 9   | 10  |
| Replace air cleaner cartridge (5)         |     |    | ●  |    |     | ●   |     |     | ●   |     |
| Replace fuel filter cartridge (7)         |     |    | ●  |    |     | ●   |     |     | ●   |     |
| Change the brake fluid                    | (6) |    |    |    |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| Replace the passenger compartment cleaner | o   | ●  | o  | ●  | o   | ●   | o   | ●   | o   | ●   |

(5) If the vehicle is used in dusty areas, this cleaner must be replaced every 12,000 mi (20,000 km).

(7) If the vehicle runs on fuel with quality below the relevant European specification, this filter must be replaced every 12,000 mi (20,000 km).

(6) The brake fluid replacement has to be done every two years, irrespective of the mileage.

(●) Mandatory operations

(o) Recommended operations

## ENGINE COMPARTMENT



### CHECKING LEVELS

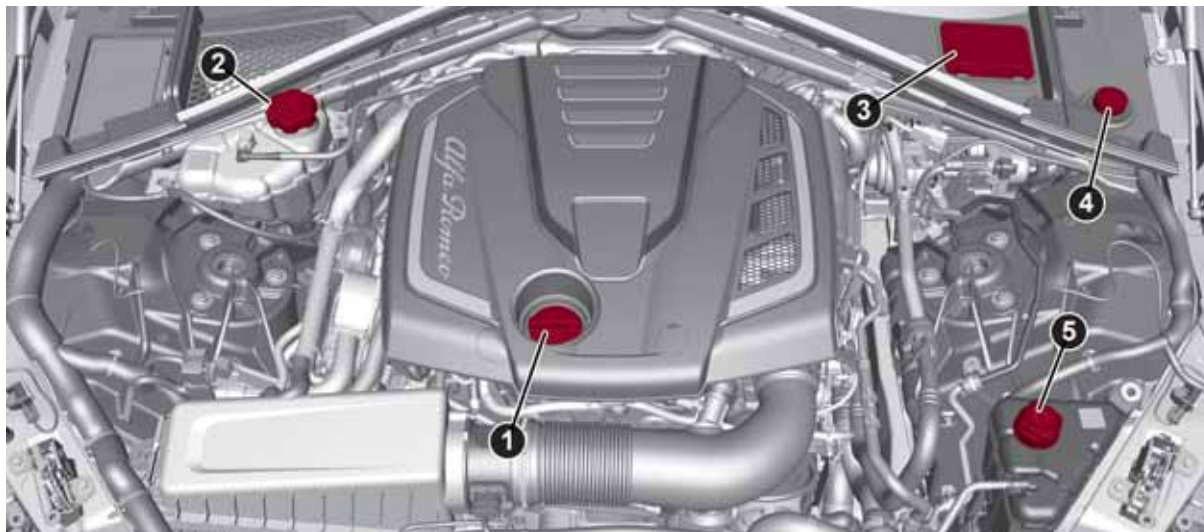


149) 150)



64)

Versions - 2.0 T4 MAir engine, fig. 164



164

0902650002EM

1. Engine oil filler 2. Primary engine cooling reservoir plug 3. Brake fluid reservoir cap access cover 4. Windscreen/headlights washer fluid reservoir cap 5. Secondary engine cooling reservoir plug



ABC

**Versions - 2.0 T4 MAir engine right-hand drive, fig. 165**

165

0902650006EM

1. Engine oil filler   2. Brake fluid reservoir cap access cover   3. Primary engine cooling reservoir plug   4. Windscreen/headlights washer fluid reservoir cap   5. Secondary engine cooling reservoir plug





166

09026S0503EM

1. Engine oil filler fluid reservoir cap   2. Engine coolant reservoir cap   3. Brake fluid reservoir cap access cover   4. Windscreen/headlights washer   5. Secondary engine cooling reservoir plug



**ENGINE OIL**

151)



65)

**IMPORTANT** It is advisable to check the oil level indication before long journeys.

The engine oil level can be seen on the instrument panel display every time the engine is started, or on the Connect system display by activating on the main menu (MENU button) the following functions in sequence: "Apps"; "My Car" and "Oil Level".

Check on the display using the 6 notches that the oil level is between MIN and MAX level: 1 notch MIN level, 6 notches MAX level. If the oil level indication reaches the first red mark, add oil through the filler 1, considering that each notch shown on the display corresponds to approximately:

*2.0 T4 MAir engine*

0.055 UK gal (250 ml).

*2.2 JTD engine*

0.040 UK gal (150 ml).



66)

**IMPORTANT** Make sure not to add too much engine oil when topping up. Engine oil in excess may damage the engine. Have the car checked. Never exceed the MAX level when topping up engine oil. It

is advisable to check the oil level in intermediate steps on the display.

**IMPORTANT** The oil level is not refreshed immediately on the display after topping up. Consequently, wait for the oil level to be refreshed on the display following to procedure shown below.

**Top-up and oil level indication update on display**

If a top-up is needed, proceed as follows to ensure correct indication of the oil level on the display:

*2.0 T4 MAir engine*

with the vehicle level, run the engine for approximately 5 minutes (temperature higher than 176 °F (80°C)) and then stop the engine;

start the engine again and idle it for about 2 minutes.

*2.2 JTD engine*

with the vehicle level, run the engine until the second oil temperature notch lights up on the display on the instrument panel, then stop the engine;

wait for at least 3 minutes, turn the ignition switch to ON without starting the engine and wait for 20 seconds.

**IMPORTANT** If the indication is not correct after the procedure, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

**IMPORTANT** The oil dipstick in the engine compartment, on versions with 2.2 JTD engine, must be used **ONLY** if the oil level sensor is faulty. The latter condition is indicated by the symbol which will appear on the instrument panel.

The manual engine oil level checking procedure must be carried out, when necessary, on a cold engine only.

Never attempt to carry out the manual engine oil checking procedure (using the dipstick) with the engine hot. Contact with the surrounding hot engine parts could cause burns.

This operation is permitted only for the time actually needed to restore correct operation of the oil level sensor at an Alfa Romeo dealership.

**Engine oil consumption**

67)



4)

The maximum engine oil consumption is usually 0.88 lb (400 grams) every 620 mi (1000 km). When the car is new, the engine needs to be run in; therefore the engine oil consumption can only be considered stabilised after the first 3100 - 3730 mi (5000 - 6000 km).

## ENGINE COOLANT FLUID



152)



68)

If the level is too low, unscrew the reservoir cap and add the fluid described in the "Technical Specifications" chapter.

## WASHER FLUID FOR WINDSCREEN/ HEADLIGHTS



153) 154)

The windscreen and headlights washer fluid reservoir (where available) is equipped with a telescopic filler.

If the level is too low, remove reservoir cap 4 and lift the filler then add the fluid described in the "Technical Specifications" chapter.

**IMPORTANT** With a low fluid level (indicated by the dedicated symbol appearing on the instrument panel display), the headlight washer system does not work, even though the screen washers continue to work.

## BRAKE FLUID

Check that the fluid is at the max. level. If the liquid level in the tank is insufficient, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the system checked.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION ACTIVATION SYSTEM OIL



5)

The transmission control oil level should only be checked at an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

## USEFUL ADVICE FOR EXTENDING THE LIFE OF YOUR BATTERY

To avoid draining your battery and make it last longer, observe the following instructions:

❑ when you park the car, ensure that the doors, tailgate and bonnet are closed properly, to prevent any lights from remaining on inside the passenger's compartment;

❑ switch off all roof lights inside the car: the car is however equipped with a system which switches all internal lights off automatically;

❑ do not keep accessories (e.g. radio, hazard warning lights, etc.) switched on for a long time when the engine is not running;

❑ before performing any operation on the electrical system, disconnect the negative battery cable.

If, after purchasing the car, you wish to install electrical accessories which require permanent electrical supply (e.g. alarm, etc.) or accessories which influence the electrical supply requirements, contact an Alfa Romeo

Dealership, whose qualified staff will evaluate the overall electrical consumption.

**IMPORTANT** If the battery was disconnected, do not start the engine immediately after reconnecting the terminals, but press the start button, without operating the pedals, to turn on the instrument panel and then start the engine.

The  symbol on the instrument panel will remain on, indicating that the steering must be initialised. To do this, turn the steering wheel from one end to the other and bring it back to the centre position within 30 seconds from starting the engine. If any red warning lights on the instrument panel remain lit, stop the engine, wait for at least 5 seconds and repeat the starting procedure described above.

**IMPORTANT** If the charge level remains under 50% for a long time, the battery is damaged by sulphation, reducing its capacity and efficiency at start-up. The battery is also more prone to the risk of freezing (at temperatures as high as 14 °F (-10°C)).



ABC

**BATTERY****155) 156) 157) 158)****69)****6)**

The battery does not require the electrolyte to be topped up with distilled water. A periodic check carried out at an Alfa Romeo Dealership is, however, necessary to check efficiency. Follow the battery manufacturer's instructions for maintenance.

**WARNING**

**149)** Never smoke while working in the engine compartment: gas and inflammable vapours may be present, with the risk of fire.

**150)** Be very careful when working in the engine compartment when the engine is hot: you may get burned. Do not get too close to the radiator cooling fan: the electric fan may start; danger of injury. Scarves, ties and other loose clothing might be pulled by moving parts.

**151)** If the engine oil is being topped up, wait for the engine to cool down before loosening the filler cap, particularly for vehicles with aluminium cap (where provided). **WARNING:** risk of burns!

**152)** The cooling system is pressurised. If necessary, only replace the plug with another original or the operation of the system may be adversely affected. Do not remove the reservoir plug when the engine is hot: you risk scalding yourself.

**153)** Do not travel with the windscreen washer fluid reservoir empty: the windscreen washer is essential for improving visibility. Repeated operation of the system without fluid could damage or cause rapid deterioration of some system components.

**154)** Some commercial additives for windscreen washer fluid are flammable. The engine compartment contains hot components which may start a fire.

**155)** Battery fluid is poisonous and corrosive. Avoid contact with the skin and eyes. Keep open flames away from the battery and do not use objects that might create sparks: risk of explosion and fire.

**156)** Using the battery with insufficient fluid irreparably damages the battery and may cause an explosion.

**157)** If the vehicle must remain unused for a long time at a very low temperature, remove the battery and take it to a warm place, to avoid freezing.

**158)** When performing any operation on the battery or near it, always protect your eyes with special goggles.

**IMPORTANT**

**64)** Be careful not to confuse the various types of fluids while topping up: they are not compatible with each other! Topping up with an unsuitable fluid could severely damage your vehicle.

**65)** The oil level must never exceed the MAX reference.

**66)** If the MAX mark is exceeded (last notch on the right turns red) after the top-up, go to an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible to have the oil in excess removed.

**67)** Do not add oil with specifications other than those of the oil already in the engine.

**68)** Use a fluid of the same type as that already present in the reservoir for any topping up of the engine cooling system. The fluid cannot be mixed with other types of antifreeze fluids. In the event of topping up with an unsuitable product, under no circumstances start the engine and contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

**69)** When you need to disconnect or remove the battery, do not close the boot. In order to avoid possible accidental closure, it is recommended to place an obstacle (e.g. a cloth) on the lock that would physically avoid closure.

**IMPORTANT**

**4)** Used engine oil and oil filters contain substances which are harmful to the environment. To change the oil and filters, we advise you to contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

**5)** Used transmission fluid contains substances that are harmful to the environment. You are advised to contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership for oil changes.

**6)** Batteries contain substances which are very dangerous for the environment. For battery replacement, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

## BATTERY RECHARGING

### IMPORTANT NOTES



159|160)

**IMPORTANT** Before using the charging device, always make sure that it is appropriate for the installed battery, with constant voltage (below 14.8 V) and low amperage (maximum 15 A).

**IMPORTANT** Recharge the battery in a well ventilated environment.

**IMPORTANT** Never charge or recharge a frozen battery: it may explode because of the nitrogen trapped inside the ice crystals.

**IMPORTANT** At all times while charging or recharging the battery, make sure that any sparks or open flames are kept sufficiently far away from the battery.

**IMPORTANT** Before using any devices to charge or to maintain the charge of the battery, carefully follow the instructions provided with the device in order to properly and safely connect it to the car battery.

You can recharge the battery without disconnecting the wires of the vehicle's electrical system.

❑ To reach the battery, remove the access panel inside the boot fig. 167;

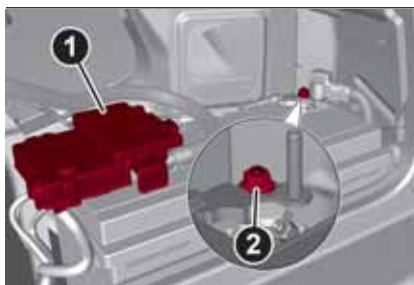


167

0903650001EM

❑ remove the protective cover 1 fig. 168 and connect the positive cable terminal of the charger (usually red) to the positive terminal (+) of the battery;

❑ connect the negative terminal of the charger (usually black) to nut 2 next to the negative terminal (-) of the battery, as shown in fig. 168;



168

0903650002EM

The vehicle is equipped with an IBS (Intelligent Battery Sensor), which is able

to measure the charge and discharge voltage and calculate the charge level and the general condition of the battery. The sensor is placed next to the negative terminal (-) of the battery.

For a correct charge/discharge procedure, the charge voltage must go through the IBS sensor.

❑ Turn the charger on and follow the instructions on the user's manual to completely recharge the battery;

❑ when the battery is charged, turn the charger off before disconnecting it from the battery;

❑ first disconnect the black cable terminal of the battery charger and then the red cable terminal;

❑ refit the protective cover of the positive terminal of the battery and the access cover to the battery compartment.

**IMPORTANT** If a "quick-type" battery charger is used with the battery fitted on the vehicle, before connecting it disconnect both cables of the battery itself. Do not use a "quick-type" battery charger to provide the starting voltage.



70)



ABC



## WARNING

**159)** The process of charging or recharging the battery produces hydrogen, a flammable gas that can explode and cause serious injury.

**160)** When charging or recharging the battery, always follow the precautions listed.



## IMPORTANT

**70)** When you need to disconnect or remove the battery, do not close the boot. In order to avoid possible accidental closure, it is recommended to place an obstacle (e.g. a cloth) on the lock that would physically avoid closure.

## SERVICING PROCEDURES



161) 162) 163)



71) 72) 73) 74) 75) 76) 77)

## AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM MAINTENANCE



78) 79)

To ensure the best possible performance, the air conditioning system must be checked and undergo maintenance at an Alfa Romeo Dealership at the beginning of the summer.

## WINDSCREEN WIPER

### Raising the windscreen wiper blades ("Service position" function)

The "Service position" function allows the driver to replace the windscreen wiper blades more easily. It is also recommended to activate this function when it is snowing and to make it easier to remove any dirt deposits in the area where the blades are normally positioned, when washing.

### Activation of the function

To activate this function disable the windscreen wiper (ring nut fig. 169 in position **0**) before setting the ignition device to STOP.

This function can only be activated within 2 minutes of setting the ignition device to STOP.

To activate this function, move the lever upwards (unstable position) for at least three seconds.



169

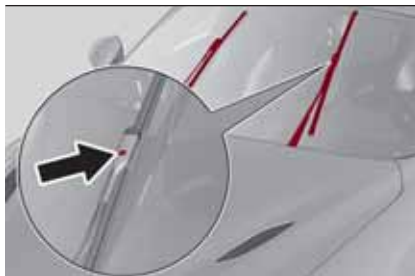
0904650001EM

If, after using the function, the ignition device is set back to ON with the blades in a position other than rest position (at the base of the windscreen), they will only return to rest position following a command given using the stalk (stalk upwards, into unstable position) or when a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) is exceeded.

### Replacing the windscreen wiper blades

Proceed as follows:

❑ raise the wiper arm, press tab fig. 170 of the attachment spring and remove the blade from the arm;



170

09046S0002EM

- ☐ fit the new blade, inserting the tab in the dedicated housing in the arm and checking that it is locked;
- ☐ lower the wiper arm onto the windscreen.

**IMPORTANT** Do not operate the windscreen wiper with the blades lifted from the windscreen.

### Windscreen washer

The window washer nozzles are fixed. If there is no jet of fluid, firstly check that there is fluid in the reservoir (see paragraph "Engine compartment" in this chapter).

Then check that the nozzle holes are not clogged; use a needle to unblock them if necessary.



### WARNING

**161)** The air intake system (air cleaner, rubber hoses, etc.) can be a protection in the case of blowbacks from the engine. **DO NOT REMOVE** this system unless you need to carry out repair or servicing operations. Before starting the engine, ensure that the system has not been removed: failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury.

**162)** Exhaust emissions are very dangerous, and may be lethal. They contain carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless gas which can cause fainting and poisoning if inhaled.

**163)** The exhaust system may reach high temperatures and may cause a fire if the vehicle is parked on flammable material. Dry grass or leaves can also catch fire if they come into contact with the exhaust system. Do not park or use the vehicle in a place in which the exhaust system might come into contact with flammable material.



### IMPORTANT

**71)** Incorrect servicing of the vehicle or failure to carry out operations or repairs (when necessary) may lead to more expensive repairs, damage to other components or have a negative impact on the vehicle performance. Have any malfunction inspected immediately by an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

**72)** The vehicle is equipped with fluids which are optimised or protecting its performance and life and extending service intervals. Do not use chemicals for washing these components since they may damage the engine, the gearbox or the climate control system. This damage is not covered by the vehicle's warranty. If any component needs to be washed due to malfunctioning, use only the specific liquid for that procedure.

**73)** An excessive or insufficient amount of oil inside the base is extremely damaging to the engine. Make sure it is always at an adequate level.

**74)** Vehicles equipped with catalytic converter must be fuelled only with unleaded petrol. Leaded petrol would permanently damage the catalytic converter and eliminate its ability to reduce polluting emissions, seriously compromising the engine performance, which would be irreparably damaged. If the engine does not work correctly, especially if it starts irregularly or if there is a reduction of its performance, immediately go to an Alfa Romeo Dealership. Prolonged and faulty operation of the engine may cause overheating of the converter and, as a consequence, possible damage to the converter and the vehicle.

**75)** Using a gearbox fluid different from that approved may compromise gearshifting quality and/or cause vibration of the gearbox itself.



ABC



**76)** It is recommended to have the vehicle serviced by an Alfa Romeo Dealership. When carrying out normal periodic operations and small servicing interventions personally on the vehicle, it is recommended to use suitable equipment, genuine spare parts and the necessary fluids. Do not carry out any interventions if you don't have the necessary experience.

**77)** When you need to disconnect or remove the battery, do not close the boot. In order to avoid possible accidental closure, it is recommended to place an obstacle (e.g. a cloth) on the lock that would physically avoid closure.

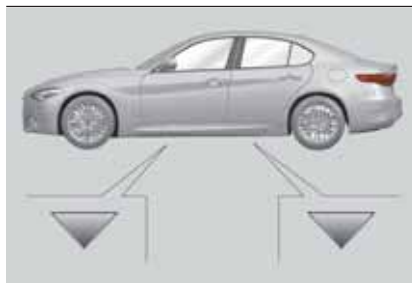
**78)** Always require the use of only compressor coolants and lubricants approved and suitable for the specific air conditioning system fitted on the vehicle. Some non-approved coolants are flammable and may explode, with the risk of injuries. The use of non-approved coolants or lubricants may adversely affect system efficiency, leading to expensive repairs.

**79)** The air conditioner system contains coolant under high pressure: to avoid injuries to people or damage to the system, any coolant addition or repair that requires to disconnect the cables must be carried out by an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

## LIFTING THE VEHICLE

If the car needs to be jacked up, go to an Alfa Romeo Dealership which is equipped with shop jacks or jack arms.

The vehicle lifting points are marked on the side skirts with the ▽ symbols (see illustration in fig. 171).



171

09056S0001EM

## WHEELS AND TYRES



164) 165) 166)

### SNOW CHAINS



80)

#### Rear Wheel Drive and All-wheel drive versions

0.28 in (7-mm) snow chains can be used on all tyres. For tyres up to 8.85 in (225 mm) in width (205/60R16, 225/55R16, 225/50R17, 225/45R18), it is also possible to install 0.35 in (9 mm) chains.

We recommend using snow chains available from the Alfa Romeo Dealership.

#### Important notes

The use of snow chains should be in compliance with local regulations of each country. In certain countries, tyres marked with code M+S (Mud and Snow) are considered as winter equipment; therefore their use is equivalent to that of the snow chains.

The snow chains may be applied only to the rear wheel tyres.

Check the tension of the snow chains after the first few metres have been driven.



**IMPORTANT** Using snow chains with tyres with non-original dimensions may damage the vehicle.

**IMPORTANT** Using different size or type (M+S, snow, etc.) tyres between front and rear axle may adversely affect vehicle driveability, with the risk of losing control of the vehicle and resulting accidents.

### **SUGGESTIONS ABOUT THE ROTATION OF THE TYRES**

The front and rear tyres are subject to different loads and stress due to steering, manoeuvres and braking. For this reason they are subject to uneven wear.

To prevent this problem, the tyres should be rotated at the appropriate time (6000 / 9000 mi (10000 / 15000 km)).

Inverting the tyres means moving them to different positions on the same side of the car (front to back and vice versa).

**IMPORTANT** Crossing the tyres is not advised, so placing a tyre on a different axle on the other side of the car is impossible.

**IMPORTANT** On cars equipped with differentiated tyres (tyre size different between front and rear axles, ex. QV version) rotation of any of the tyres is not advised.

Tyre rotation contributes to the preservation of the grip and traction

performance on wet, muddy or snowy roads, guaranteeing optimal driveability of the vehicle.

In the case of irregular wear of the tyres identify the cause and correct it as soon as possible, by contacting an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

#### *All Wheel Drive (AWD) versions*

It is recommended to avoid situations with a large difference in wear between the front and rear tyres and to strictly use winter tyres of the sizes given in the "Rims and tyres provided" table.

The AWD systems and the original tyres were developed together to ensure the vehicle's best performance. When changing the tyres, it is therefore recommended to use the same "AR" marked tyres, to maintain the same level of performance and component life.



### **WARNING**

**164)** *The road holding qualities of the car also depend on the correct inflation pressure of the tyres.*

**165)** *If tyre pressure is too low, it may overheat and be severely damaged as a result.*

**166)** *Never submit alloy rims to repainting treatments requiring the use of temperatures exceeding 150°C. The mechanical properties of the wheels could be impaired.*



### **IMPORTANT**

**80)** *Keep your speed down when snow chains are fitted; do not exceed 50 km/h (or the equivalent in miles). Avoid potholes, do not drive over steps or sidewalks and do not drive long distances over roads without snow, to avoid damaging both your vehicle and the road surface.*



ABC

## BODY



### PRESERVING THE BODYWORK

#### Paint



Touch up abrasions and scratches immediately to prevent the formation of rust.

Some parts of the vehicle may be covered with a matt paint which, in order to be maintained intact, requires special care: see the instructions in the warning at the end of this paragraph



To correctly wash the vehicle, follow these instructions:

❑ if high pressure jets or cleaners are used to wash the vehicle, keep a distance of at least 15 in (40 cm) from the bodywork to avoid damage or alteration. Build up of water could cause damage to the vehicle in the long term;

❑ to make it easier to remove any dirt deposits in the area where the blades are normally located it is recommended to position the windscreen wipers vertically (service position), for more information consult the “Maintenance procedures” paragraph in this chapter.

If you want to wash a car with automatic transmission in a car wash that moves it, you must do the following:

❑ make sure that the car is on a flat surface and that automatic engagement of the parking brake when the engine is switched off is disabled (for how to disable it, refer to the “Electric parking brake” section in the “Starting and driving” chapter);

❑ with the car stationary, the gear in N (Neutral) and the brake pedal up: press the start button. The car will remain in N (Neutral) for 15 minutes, after which P (Park) mode will be activated.



#### IMPORTANT

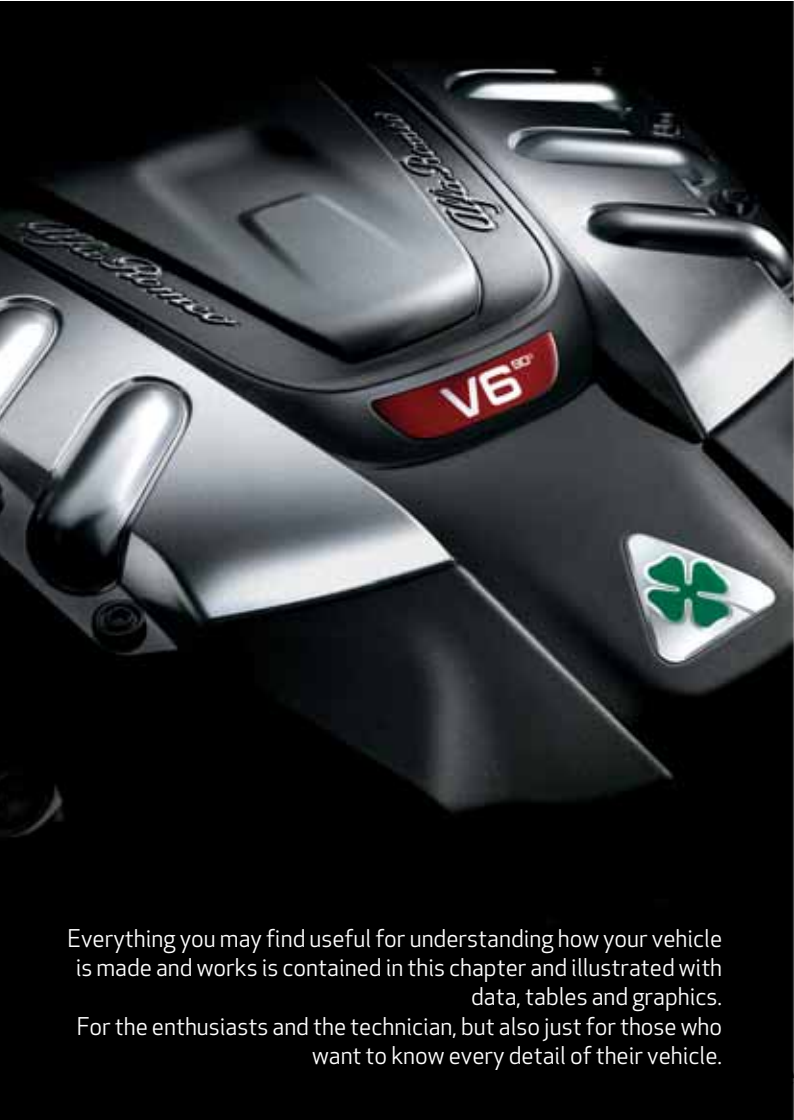
**81)** In order to preserve the aesthetic appearance of the paint abrasive products and/or polishes should not be used for cleaning the vehicle.

**82)** Avoid washing with rollers and/or brushes in washing stations. Wash the vehicle only by hand using neutral pH detergents; dry it with a wet chamois leather. Abrasive products and/or polishes should not be used for cleaning the car. Bird droppings must be washed off immediately and thoroughly as the acid they contain is particularly aggressive. Avoid (if at all possible) parking the vehicle under trees; remove vegetable resins immediately as, when dried, it may only be possible to remove them with abrasive products and/or polishes, which is highly inadvisable as they could alter the typical opaqueness of the paint. Do not use pure windscreen washer fluid for cleaning the front windscreen and rear window; dilute it min. 50% with water. Only use pure screen washer fluid when strictly necessary due to outside temperature conditions.



#### IMPORTANT

**7)** Detergents pollute the environment. Only wash your vehicle in areas equipped to collect and treat wastewater from this type of activity.



## TECHNICAL DATA

|                                              |     |
|----------------------------------------------|-----|
| IDENTIFICATION DATA . . . . .                | 170 |
| ENGINE . . . . .                             | 171 |
| RIMS AND TYRES . . . . .                     | 173 |
| DIMENSIONS . . . . .                         | 176 |
| WEIGHTS . . . . .                            | 178 |
| REFUELLING . . . . .                         | 180 |
| FLUIDS AND LUBRICANTS . . . . .              | 182 |
| PERFORMANCE . . . . .                        | 185 |
| FUEL CONSUMPTION . . . . .                   | 187 |
| CO EMISSIONS . . . . .                       | 189 |
| PRESCRIPTIONS FOR HANDLING                   |     |
| THE VEHICLE AT THE END OF ITS LIFE . . . . . | 190 |

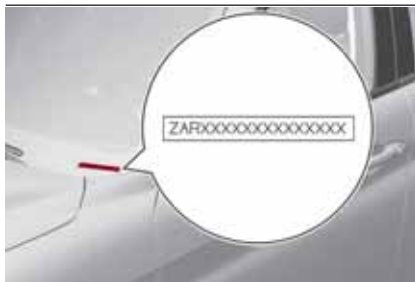
Everything you may find useful for understanding how your vehicle is made and works is contained in this chapter and illustrated with data, tables and graphics.

For the enthusiasts and the technician, but also just for those who want to know every detail of their vehicle.

## IDENTIFICATION DATA

### VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is stamped on a plate on the front left corner of the dashboard cover fig. 172, which can be seen from outside the vehicle, through the windscreen.



172

10016S0001EM

This number is also printed on the chassis at the front left shock absorber and can be seen by opening the bonnet fig. 173.



173

10016S0002EM

### VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (VIN) PLATE

The plate is located on the left side front door pillar fig. 174 and shows the data about:

- 1: correct value of smoke coefficient (for Diesel engines);
- 2: name of the manufacturer, vehicle type-approval number, vehicle identification number, max. permitted weights;
- 3: engine identification, type variant version, spare part number, colour code, additional information.



174

10016S0003EM

## ENGINE

| 2.0 T4 MAir engine                    | 200 HP                                            | 280 HP    |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| Cycle                                 | Otto                                              | Otto      |
| Number and position of cylinders      | 4 in line                                         | 4 in line |
| Piston bore and stroke (mm)           | 84 / 90                                           | 84 / 90   |
| Total displacement (cm <sup>3</sup> ) | 1995                                              | 1995      |
| Compression ratio                     | 10 ± 0.4                                          | 10 ± 0.4  |
| Maximum power (ECE) (kW)              | 147                                               | 206       |
| Maximum power (ECE) (HP)              | 200                                               | 280       |
| Corresponding engine speed (rpm)      | 4500                                              | 5250      |
| Maximum torque (ECE) (Nm)             | 330                                               | 400       |
| Maximum torque (ECE) (kgm)            | 33.7                                              | 40.8      |
| Corresponding engine speed (rpm)      | 1750                                              | 2250      |
| Fuel                                  | Unleaded petrol 95 R.O.N. (EN 228 specifications) |           |



ABC

| 2.2 JTD engine                                    | 136 HP                                                    | 150 HP     | 180 HP     | 210 HP     |
|---------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|------------|------------|------------|
| Cycle                                             | Diesel                                                    | Diesel     | Diesel     | Diesel     |
| Number and position of cylinders                  | 4 in line                                                 | 4 in line  | 4 in line  | 4 in line  |
| Piston bore and stroke (mm)                       | 83 / 99                                                   | 83 / 99    | 83 / 99    | 83 / 99    |
| Total displacement (cm <sup>3</sup> )             | 2143                                                      | 2143       | 2143       | 2143       |
| Compression ratio                                 | 15.5 ± 0.4                                                | 15.5 ± 0.4 | 15.5 ± 0.4 | 15.5 ± 0.4 |
| Maximum power (ECE) (kW)                          | 100                                                       | 110        | 132        | 154        |
| Maximum power (ECE) (HP)                          | 136                                                       | 150        | 180        | 210        |
| Corresponding engine speed (rpm)                  | 4000                                                      | 4250       | 3750       | 3750       |
| Maximum torque (ECE) (Nm) manual transmission     | 380                                                       | 380        | 380        | -          |
| Maximum torque (ECE) (kgm) manual transmission    | 38.75                                                     | 38.75      | 38.75      | -          |
| Corresponding engine speed (rpm)                  | 1500                                                      | 1500       | 1500       | -          |
| Maximum torque (ECE) (Nm) automatic transmission  | 450                                                       | 450        | 450        | 470        |
| Maximum torque (ECE) (kgm) automatic transmission | 45.89                                                     | 45.89      | 45.89      | 47.9       |
| Corresponding engine speed (rpm)                  | 1750                                                      | 1750       | 1750       | 1750       |
| Fuel                                              | Automotive diesel fuel (EN590 and EN16734 specifications) |            |            |            |

## RIMS AND TYRES



### RIMS AND TYRES PROVIDED



167)

| Version                                            | Wheels            | Tyres                            |
|----------------------------------------------------|-------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>2.0 T4 MAir engine</b><br><b>2.2 JTD engine</b> | 16x7J             | 205/60 R16 92V<br>225/55 R16 95W |
|                                                    | 17x7.5J           | 225/50 R17 94W                   |
|                                                    | 18x8J             | 225/45 R18 91W                   |
|                                                    | FRONT<br>18x8J(*) | FRONT<br>225/45 R18 91W(*)       |
|                                                    | REAR<br>18x9J(*)  | REAR<br>255/40 R18 95W(*)        |
|                                                    | 19x8J             | 225/40 R19 89W                   |
|                                                    | FRONT<br>19x8J(+) | FRONT<br>225/40 R19 89W(+)       |
|                                                    | REAR<br>19x9J(+)  | REAR<br>255/35 R19 92W(+)        |

(\*) Matching rims/tyres

(+) Matching rims/tyres

NOTE In partnership with Pirelli, Alfa Romeo has developed a range of winter tyres specially for the Alfa Romeo Giulia. They can be identified by the "AR" mark. The "AR" tyres ensure the best vehicle performance and safety. They are available in the following sizes: 205/60 R16 96H, 225/50 R17 94H and 225/45 R18 91H.

Check the vehicle registration document for which sizes can be installed.



ABC

**COLD TYRE INFLATION PRESSURE**

When the tires are warm, the inflation pressure should be + 0.3 bar (4.4 psi) in relation to the recommended figure. However, recheck that the value is correct with the tyre cold.

If it is necessary to raise the vehicle, refer to the "Raising the vehicle" paragraph in the "In an emergency" chapter.

**2.0 T4 MAir and 2.2 JTD engines**

| Tyres      | Unladen/medium load |                    | Full load          |                    |
|------------|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
|            | Front               | Rear               | Front              | Rear               |
| 205/60 R16 | 2.7 (39.2 psi) (*)  | 2.9 (42.2 psi) (*) | 2.7 (39.2 psi) (*) | 2.9 (42.2 psi) (*) |
| 225/55 R16 | 2.2 (31.9 psi)      | 2.4 (34.8 psi)     | 2.7 (39.2 psi)     | 3.0 (43.5 psi)     |
| 225/50 R17 | 2.2 (31.9 psi) (*)  | 2.4 (34.8 psi) (*) | 2.7 (39.2 psi) (*) | 3.0 (43.5 psi) (*) |
| 225/45 R18 | 2.2 (31.9 psi) (*)  | 2.4 (34.8 psi) (*) | 2.7 (39.2 psi) (*) | 3.0 (43.5 psi) (*) |
| 225/45 R18 | 2.0 (29 psi)        | —                  | 2.4 (34.8 psi)     | —                  |
| 255/40 R18 | —                   | 2.2 (31.9 psi)     | —                  | 2.6 (37.7 psi)     |
| 225/40 R19 | 2.4 (34.8 psi)      | 2.6 (37.7 psi)     | 2.7 (39.2 psi)     | 3.0 (43.5 psi)     |
| 225/40 R19 | 2.4 (34.8 psi)      | —                  | 2.7 (39.2 psi)     | —                  |
| 255/35 R19 | —                   | 2.3 (33.4 psi)     | —                  | 2.9 (42.2 psi)     |

(\*) Pressures suitable for all types of tyres (summer and winter)



## SNOW CHAINS



83)

### Rear Wheel Drive and All-wheel drive versions

7-mm snow chains can be used on all tyres. For tyres up to 8.86 in (225 mm) in width (205/60R16, 225/55R16, 225/50R17, 225/45R18), it is also possible to install 0.35 in (9 mm) chains.

We recommend using snow chains available from the Alfa Romeo Dealership.

### Important notes

The use of snow chains should be in compliance with local regulations of each country. In certain countries, tyres marked with code M+S (Mud and Snow) are considered as winter equipment; therefore their use is equivalent to that of the snow chains.

The snow chains may be applied only to the rear wheel tyres.

Check the tension of the snow chains after the first few metres have been driven.

**IMPORTANT** Using snow chains with tyres with non-original dimensions may damage the vehicle.

**IMPORTANT** Using different size or type (M+S, snow, etc.) tyres between front and rear axle may adversely affect vehicle driveability, with the risk of losing control of the vehicle and resulting accidents.



### WARNING

**167)** If winter tyres with a lower speed rating than that indicated in the Registration Document are used, do not exceed the maximum speed corresponding to the speed rating of the tyres used.



### IMPORTANT

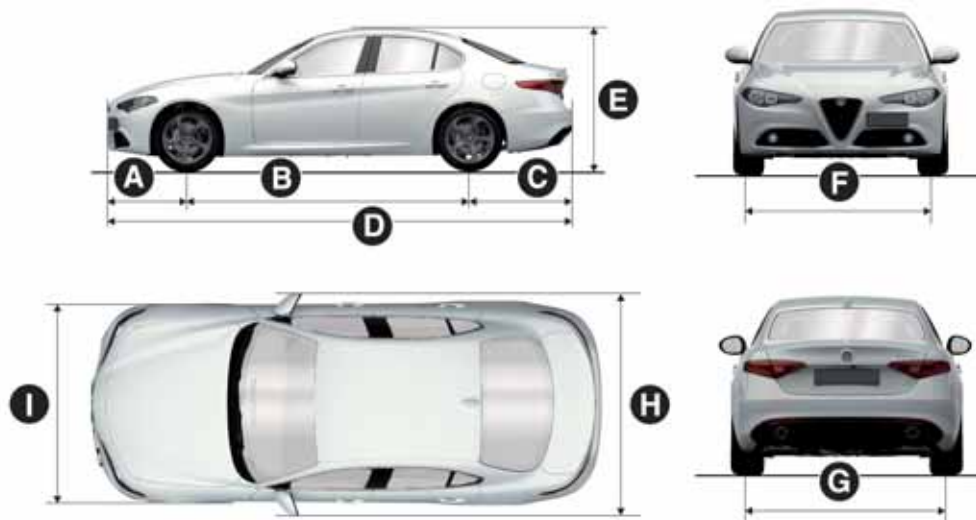
**83)** Keep your speed down when snow chains are fitted; do not exceed 50 km/h. Avoid potholes, do not drive over steps or sidewalks and do not drive long distances over roads without snow, to avoid damaging both your vehicle and the road surface.



ABC

## DIMENSIONS

Dimensions are expressed in inches/millimeters and refer to the vehicle equipped with its standard-supplied tyres. Height is measured with vehicle unladen, fig. 175.



175

10106S0001EM

| A        | B             | C          | D               | E                                    | F                                      | G                                    | H              | I          |
|----------|---------------|------------|-----------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------|------------|
| 31.3/795 | 111/<br>2,820 | 40.5/1,028 | 182.8/<br>4,643 | 56.5/<br>1,436(+)<br>57/<br>1,450(*) | 61.3/<br>1,557(+)<br>61.4/<br>1,559(*) | 64/<br>1,625(+)<br>63.1/<br>1,604(*) | 79.7/<br>2,024 | 73.2/1,860 |

(+) RWD versions

(\*) AWD versions

Small variations with respect to the reported values are possible depending on the dimensions of the rims.



ABC

## WEIGHTS

| Weights (lb/kg)                                                                          | 2.0 T4 MAir engine        |                                     | 2.2 JTD Engine           |                              |                           |                                                  |                                                      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                          | AT <sup>(oo)</sup><br>RWD | AT <sup>(oo)</sup><br>280 HP<br>AWD | MT <sup>(o)</sup><br>RWD | MT <sup>(o)</sup> (+)<br>RWD | AT <sup>(oo)</sup><br>RWD | AT <sup>(oo)</sup><br>LOW CO <sub>2</sub><br>RWD | AT <sup>(oo)</sup><br>210 HP<br>AWD<br>180 HP<br>AWD |
| Unladen weight (with all fluids, fuel tank filled to 90% and without optional equipment) | 3,150 lb<br>(1429 kg)     | 3,373 lb<br>(1530 kg)               | 3,029 lb<br>(1374 kg)    | 3,086 lb<br>(1400 kg)        | 3,186 lb<br>(1445 kg)     | 3,230 lb<br>(1465 kg)                            | 3,384 lb<br>(1535 kg)                                |
| Payload including the driver (*)                                                         | 1,270 lb<br>(576 kg)      | 1,268 kg<br>(575 kg)                | 1,248 lb<br>(566 kg)     | 1,190 lb<br>(540 kg)         | 1,268 lb<br>(575 kg)      | 1,224 lb<br>(555 kg)                             | 1,268 lb<br>(575 kg)                                 |
| Maximum permitted loads (**)                                                             |                           |                                     |                          |                              |                           |                                                  |                                                      |
| – front axle                                                                             | 2,028 lb<br>(920 kg)      | 2,205 lb<br>(1000 kg)               | 1,962 lb<br>(890 kg)     | 1,962 lb<br>(890 kg)         | 2,071 lb<br>(940 kg)      | 2,083 lb<br>(945 kg)                             | 2,238 lb<br>(1015 kg)                                |
| – rear axle                                                                              | 2,535 lb<br>(1150 kg)     | 2,557 lb<br>(1160 kg)               | 2,458 lb<br>(1115 kg)    | 2,458 lb<br>(1115 kg)        | 2,524 lb<br>(1145 kg)     | 2,535 lb<br>(1150 kg)                            | 2,557 lb<br>(1160 kg)                                |
| – total                                                                                  | 4,420 lb<br>(2005 kg)     | 4,641 lb<br>(2105 kg)               | 4,277 lb<br>(1940 kg)    | 4,277 lb<br>(1940 kg)        | 4,453 lb<br>(2020 kg)     | 4,453 lb<br>(2020 kg)                            | 4,652 lb<br>(2110 kg)                                |
| Towable loads                                                                            |                           |                                     |                          |                              |                           |                                                  |                                                      |
| – braked trailer                                                                         | 3,527 lb<br>(1600 kg)     | 3,527 lb<br>(1600 kg)               | 3,527 lb<br>(1600 kg)    | 3,527 lb<br>(1600 kg)        | 3,527 lb<br>(1600 kg)     | 3,527 lb<br>(1600 kg)                            | 3,527 lb<br>(1600 kg)                                |

(<sup>oo</sup>) Automatic transmission

(<sup>o</sup>) Manual transmission

(+) Version for specific markets

(\*) If special equipment is fitted (trailer towing equipment, etc.) the empty weight will increase and consequently the payload will decrease in relation to the maximum permitted loads.

(\*\*) Loads not to be exceeded. The user is responsible for arranging goods in the luggage compartment and/or on the load platform within the maximum permitted loads.

| Weights (lb/kg)                                 | 2.0 T4 MAir engine   |                      | 2.2 JTD Engine       |                      |                      |                      |                      |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| – trailer without brakes                        | 1,642 lb<br>(745 kg) | 1,642 lb<br>(745 kg) | 1,596 lb<br>(724 kg) | 1,596 lb<br>(724 kg) | 1,642 lb<br>(745 kg) | 1,642 lb<br>(745 kg) | 1,642 lb<br>(745 kg) |
| Maximum load on roof                            | 110 lb<br>(50 kg)    | 110 lb<br>(50 kg)    | 110 lb<br>(50 kg)    | 110 lb<br>(50 kg)    | 110 lb<br>(50 kg)    | 110 lb<br>(50 kg)    | 110 lb<br>(50 kg)    |
| Maximum load on tow hitch (trailer with brakes) | 141 lb<br>(64 kg)    | 141 lb<br>(64 kg)    | 141 lb<br>(64 kg)    | 141 lb<br>(64 kg)    | 141 lb<br>(64 kg)    | 141 lb<br>(64 kg)    | 141 lb<br>(64 kg)    |



ABC

## REFUELLING

|                                                                              | 2.0 T4 MAir engine                                                                                   | 2.2 JTD engine                                                                               |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Fuel tank (UK gal/litres)                                                    | 12.76 UK gal (58 lt)                                                                                 | 11.4 UK gal (52 lt)                                                                          |
| including a reserve of (UK gal/litres)                                       | 1.98 UK gal (9 lt)                                                                                   | 1.76 UK gal (8 lt)                                                                           |
| Primary cooling system, versions with manual transmission (UK gal/litres)    | 1.89 UK gal (8.6 lt)                                                                                 | 1.72 UK gal (8.7 lt)                                                                         |
| Primary cooling system, versions with automatic transmission (UK gal/litres) | 1.89 UK gal (8.6 lt)                                                                                 | 2.07 UK gal (9.4 lt)<br>1.96 UK gal (8.9 lt) <sup>(*)</sup>                                  |
| Secondary cooling system (UK gal/litres)                                     | 0.95 UK gal (4.3 lt)                                                                                 | 1.12 UK gal (5.1 lt) <sup>(*)</sup>                                                          |
| Engine sump and filter (UK gal/litres)                                       | 1.14 UK gal (5.2 lt)                                                                                 | 0.79 UK gal (RWD Version) / 0.88 UK gal (AWD Version)<br>3.6 (RWD Version) / 4 (AWD Version) |
| Hydraulic brake circuit (UK gal/litres)                                      | 0.20 UK gal (0.9 lt)                                                                                 | 0.20 UK gal (0.9 lt)                                                                         |
| Windscreen washer fluid reservoir (UK gal/litres)                            | 0.92 UK gal (4.2 lt)                                                                                 | 0.92 UK gal (4.2 lt)                                                                         |
| Automatic transmission, 2.0 T4 MAir engine (UK gal/litres)                   | 2.07 UK gal (RWD Version) / 2.06 UK gal (AWD Version)<br>9.4 lt (RWD Version) / 9.3 lt (AWD Version) | -                                                                                            |
| Automatic transmission, 2.2 JTD 180 HP RWD engine (UK gal/litres)            | -                                                                                                    | 2.02 UK gal (9.2 lt)                                                                         |
| Automatic transmission, 2.2 JTD 210 HP AWD engine (UK gal/litres)            | -                                                                                                    | 2.0 UK gal (9.1 lt)                                                                          |
| GETRAG G217 manual transmission (UK gal/litres)                              | 0.31 UK gal (1.4 lt)                                                                                 | 0.31 UK gal (1.4 lt)                                                                         |
| RDU 230-LSD differential (UK gal/litres)                                     | 0.20 UK gal (0.9 lt)                                                                                 | 0.20 UK gal (0.9 lt)                                                                         |
| RDU 210-eLSD differential (if present) (UK gal/litres)                       | 0.31 UK gal (1.4 lt)                                                                                 | 0.31 UK gal (1.4 lt)                                                                         |

<sup>(\*)</sup> 180 HP LOW CO<sub>2</sub> / 210 HP

|                                              | 2.0 T4 MAir engine   | 2.2 JTD engine       |
|----------------------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| RDU 210/215-LSD differential (UK gal/litres) | 0.24 UK gal (1.1 lt) | 0.24 UK gal (1.1 lt) |
| AWD System FAD transfer case (UK gal/litres) | 0.11 UK gal (0.5 lt) | 0.11 UK gal (0.5 lt) |
| AWD System TRANSFER CASE (UK gal/litres)     | 0.15 UK gal (0.7 lt) | 0.15 UK gal (0.7 lt) |



ABC

## FLUIDS AND LUBRICANTS

Your car is equipped with an engine oil that has been thoroughly developed and tested in order to meet the requirements of the Scheduled Servicing Plan. Constant use of the prescribed lubricants guarantees the fuel consumption and emission specifications. Lubricant quality is crucial for engine operation and duration.



84)

### PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS

#### ENGINE LUBRICATION

| Use                               | Features                    | Specification | Original fluids and lubricants                                                  | Replacement interval                     |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| 2.0 T4 MAir Engine                | <b>SAE 0W-30</b><br>ACEA C2 | 9.55535 - GS1 | SELENIA DIGITEK PE.<br>Contractual Technical<br>Reference N° F020.B12           | According to Scheduled<br>Servicing Plan |
| 2.2 JTD 210 CV Engine             | <b>SAE 0W-30</b><br>ACEA C2 | 9.55535 - DS1 | SELENIA W.R. FORWARD<br>0W-30<br>Contractual Technical<br>Reference N° F842.F13 | According to Scheduled<br>Servicing Plan |
| 2.2 JTD engines<br>136/150/180 HP | <b>SAE 0W-20</b><br>ACEA C2 | 9.55535-DSX   | SELENIA W.R. FORWARD<br>0W-20<br>Contractual Technical<br>Reference N° F013.K15 | According to Scheduled<br>Servicing Plan |

If lubricants conforming to the specific request are not available, products that meet the indicated specifications can be used to top up; in this case optimal performance of the engine is not guaranteed.



| Use                                           | Features                                                                   | Specification   | Original fluids and lubricants                                                       | Apps                                                                      |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lubricants and greases for drive transmission | ATF Synthetic lubricant                                                    | 9.55550-AV5     | TUTELA TRANSMISSION AS 8<br>Contractual Technical Reference No. F139.I11             | Automatic transmission                                                    |
|                                               | SAE 70W API GL-4 synthetic lubricant                                       | 9.55550-MZ7     | TUTELA TRANSMISSION GEARSYNTH LV<br>Contractual Technical Reference No. F055.N15     | Manual transmission<br>GETRAG G217 / 2.2 JTD engine                       |
|                                               | SAE 75W-85 synthetic lubricant                                             | 9.55550-DA9     | TUTELA TRANSMISSION LS AXLE FLUID<br>Contractual Technical Reference No. F059.N15    | Differential<br>RDU 230-LSD RDU 210-eLSD RDU 210/215-LSD / 2.2 JTD engine |
|                                               | SAE 75W-80 APL GL-5 synthetic lubricant                                    | 9.55550-DA10    | TUTELA TRANSMISSION HYPOIDE GEAR OIL<br>Contractual Technical Reference No. F060.N15 | AWD System FAD transfer case                                              |
|                                               | SAE 75W synthetic lubricant                                                | 9.55550-DA11    | TUTELA TRANSMISSION TRANSFER CASE<br>Contractual Technical Reference No. F061.N15    | AWD System TRANSFER CASE                                                  |
| Lubricants and greases for drive transmission | NLGI 0-1 grease for constant velocity joints with low friction coefficient | 9.55580-GRAS II | TUTELA STAR 700<br>Contractual Technical Reference No. F701.C07                      | Differential side constant velocity joints                                |
|                                               | NLGI 1-2 molybdenum disulphide grease for high temperatures                | 9.55580-GRAS II | TUTELA ALL STAR<br>Contractual Technical Reference No. F702.G07                      | Wheel side constant velocity joints                                       |
| Brake fluid                                   | DOT 4                                                                      | 9.55597         | TUTELA BRAKE FLUID EXTREME HT<br>Contractual Technical Reference No. F001.N15        | Hydraulic brakes and clutch controls                                      |



ABC

| Use                            | Features                                                               | Specification | Original fluids and lubricants                                               | Apps                                                                     |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Protective agent for radiators | CUNA NC 956-16<br>ASTMD3306                                            | 9.55523       | PARAFLU UP<br>Contractual Technical<br>Reference No. F101.M01                | Use rate 50% Not<br>mixable with different<br>formulation products. (*)  |
| Windscreen washer<br>fluid     | CUNA NC 956-11                                                         | 9.55522       | PETRONAS DURANCE<br>SC 35<br>Contractual Technical<br>Reference No. F001.D16 | To be used diluted or<br>undiluted in windscreen<br>washer/wiper systems |
| Diesel fuel additive           | Antifreeze additive for<br>diesel fuel for diesel<br>engine protection |               | TUTELA DIESEL ART<br>Contractual Technical<br>Reference No. F601.L06         | To be mixed with diesel<br>fuel (25 cc per 10 litres)                    |
| HVAC                           | R1234yf or R134yf<br>(depending on the<br>market)                      |               |                                                                              |                                                                          |

(\*) When the vehicle is used in particularly harsh weather conditions, we recommend using a 60% mixture of PARAFLU UP and 40% demineralised water.



#### IMPORTANT

**84)** The use of products with different specifications than those indicated above could cause damage to the engine that is not covered by the warranty.

## PERFORMANCE

Top performance after the initial period of vehicle usage.

| Versions                                                    | Maximum speed mph (km/h) | Acceleration from 0-62 mph sec.<br>(0-100 km/h sec.) |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>2.0 T4 MAir 200 HP engine RWD</b> automatic transmission | 146 mph (235km/h)        | 6.7                                                  |
| <b>2.0 T4 MAir 280 HP engine RWD</b> automatic transmission | 149 mph (240 km/h)       | 5,7                                                  |
| <b>2.0 T4 MAir 280 HP engine AWD</b> automatic transmission | 149 mph (240 km/h)       | 5.2                                                  |
| <b>2.2 JTD 136 HP engine RWD</b> manual transmission        | 130 mph (210 km/h)       | 9.7                                                  |
| <b>2.2 JTD 136 HP engine RWD</b> manual transmission(*)     | 130 mph (210 km/h)       | 9.7                                                  |
| <b>2.2 JTD 150 HP engine RWD</b> manual transmission        | 137 mph (220 km/h)       | 8.4                                                  |
| <b>2.2 JTD 150 HP engine RWD</b> manual transmission(*)     | 137 mph (220 km/h)       | 8.4                                                  |
| <b>2.2 JTD 180 HP engine RWD</b> manual transmission        | 143 mph (230 km/h)       | 7.2                                                  |
| <b>2.2 JTD 180 HP engine RWD</b> manual transmission (*)    | 143 mph (230 km/h)       | 7.2                                                  |
| <b>2.2 JTD 136 HP engine RWD</b> automatic transmission     | 130 mph (210 km/h)       | 9.5                                                  |
| <b>2.2 JTD 136 HP engine RWD</b> automatic transmission (*) | 130 mph (210 km/h)       | 9.5                                                  |
| <b>2.2 JTD 150 HP engine RWD</b> automatic transmission     | 137 mph (220 km/h)       | 8.1                                                  |
| <b>2.2 JTD 150 HP engine RWD</b> automatic transmission (*) | 137 mph (220 km/h)       | 8.1                                                  |
| <b>2.2 JTD 180 HP engine RWD</b> automatic transmission     | 143 mph (230 km/h)       | 7.1                                                  |
| <b>2.2 JTD 180 HP engine RWD</b> automatic transmission (*) | 143 mph (230 km/h)       | 7.1                                                  |

(\*) Version for specific markets.



ABC

| Versions                                                                       | Maximum speed mph (km/h) | Acceleration from 0-62 mph sec.<br>(0-100 km/h sec.) |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>2.2 JTD 180 HP engine RWD</b> automatic transmission<br>LOW CO <sub>2</sub> | 143 mph (230 km/h)       | 7.2                                                  |
| <b>2.2 JTD 180 HP engine AWD</b> automatic transmission                        | 143 mph (230 km/h)       | 6,9                                                  |
| <b>2.2 JTD 210 HP engine AWD</b> automatic transmission                        | 146 mph (235 km/h)       | 6.8                                                  |

## FUEL CONSUMPTION



### FUEL CONSUMPTION

The fuel consumption figures given in the table below are determined on the basis of the type-approval tests laid down by specific European Directives.

**IMPORTANT** The type of route, traffic conditions, weather conditions, driving style, general condition of the car, trim level/equipment/accessories, use of the climate control system, car load, presence of roof racks and other situations that adversely affect the aerodynamics or wind resistance lead to different fuel consumption values than those measured.

**IMPORTANT** The fuel consumption will get more regular only after having driven the first 1,850 mi (3,000 km).

### FUEL CONSUMPTION ACCORDING TO THE CURRENT EUROPEAN DIRECTIVE (UK gal/62 mi – litres/100 km)

| Versions                                                    | Urban               | Extra-urban         | Combined            |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| <b>2.0 T4 MAir 200 CV RWD engine</b> automatic transmission | 1.85 UK gal (8.4 l) | 1.01 UK gal (4.6 l) | 1.30 UK gal (6.0 l) |
| <b>2.0 T4 MAir 280 CV RWD engine</b> automatic transmission | 1.80 UK gal (8.2 l) | 1.08 UK gal (4.9 l) | 1.34 UK gal (6.1 l) |
| <b>2.0 T4 MAir 280 CV AWD engine</b> automatic transmission | 1.95 UK gal (8.9 l) | 1.08 UK gal (4.9 l) | 1.41 UK gal (6.4 l) |
| <b>2.2 JTD 136 HP RWD engine</b> manual transmission        | 1.16 UK gal (5.3 l) | 0.77 UK gal (3.5 l) | 0.92 UK gal (4.2 l) |
| <b>2.2 JTD 136 HP RWD engine</b> manual transmission(*)     | 1.12 UK gal (5.1 l) | 0.73 UK gal (3.3 l) | 0.88 UK gal (4.0 l) |
| <b>2.2 JTD 150 HP RWD engine</b> manual transmission        | 1.16 UK gal (5.3 l) | 0.77 UK gal (3.5 l) | 0.92 UK gal (4.2 l) |
| <b>2.2 JTD 150 HP RWD engine</b> manual transmission(*)     | 1.12 UK gal (5.1 l) | 0.73 UK gal (3.3 l) | 0.88 UK gal (4.0 l) |
| <b>2.2 JTD 180 HP RWD engine</b> manual transmission        | 1.16 UK gal (5.3 l) | 0.77 UK gal (3.5 l) | 0.92 UK gal (4.2 l) |
| <b>2.2 JTD 180 HP RWD engine</b> manual transmission (*)    | 1.12 UK gal (5.1 l) | 0.73 UK gal (3.3 l) | 0.88 UK gal (4.0 l) |
| <b>2.2 JTD 136 HP RWD engine</b> automatic transmission     | 1.16 UK gal (5.3 l) | 0.77 UK gal (3.5 l) | 0.92 UK gal (4.2 l) |
| <b>2.2 JTD 136 HP RWD engine</b> automatic transmission (*) | 1.12 UK gal (5.1 l) | 0.73 UK gal (3.3 l) | 0.88 UK gal (4.0 l) |
| <b>2.2 JTD 150 HP RWD engine</b> automatic transmission     | 1.16 UK gal (5.3 l) | 0.77 UK gal (3.5 l) | 0.92 UK gal (4.2 l) |

(\*) Version for specific markets.



ABC

| Versions                                                                    | Urban               | Extra-urban         | Combined            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| <b>2.2 JTD 150 HP RWD engine</b> automatic transmission (*)                 | 1.12 UK gal (5.1 l) | 0.73 UK gal (3.3 l) | 0.88 UK gal (4.0 l) |
| <b>2.2 JTD 180 HP RWD engine</b> automatic transmission                     | 1.16 UK gal (5.3 l) | 0.77 UK gal (3.5 l) | 0.92 UK gal (4.2 l) |
| <b>2.2 JTD 180 HP RWD engine</b> automatic transmission (*)                 | 1.12 UK gal (5.1 l) | 0.75 UK gal (3.4 l) | 0.88 UK gal (4.0 l) |
| <b>2.2 JTD 180 HP RWD engine</b> automatic transmission LOW CO <sub>2</sub> | 1.06 UK gal (4.8 l) | 0.70 UK gal (3.2)   | 0.84 UK gal (3.8 l) |
| <b>2.2 JTD 180 HP AWD engine</b> automatic transmission                     | 1.27 UK gal (5.8 l) | 0.88 UK gal (4.0 l) | 1.03 UK gal (4.7 l) |
| <b>2.2 JTD 210 HP AWD engine</b> automatic transmission                     | 1.27 UK gal (5.8 l) | 0.88 UK gal (4.0 l) | 1.03 UK gal (4.7 l) |

(\*) Version for specific markets.

## CO<sub>2</sub> EMISSIONS

The CO<sub>2</sub> emission levels given in the following table refer to combined consumption.

| Versions                                                                    | CO EMISSIONS <sub>2</sub><br>ACCORDING TO THE EUROPEAN DIRECTIVE IN FORCE (g/km) |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>2.0 T4 MAir 200 CV RWD engine</b> automatic transmission                 | 138                                                                              |
| <b>2.0 T4 MAir 280 CV RWD engine</b> automatic transmission                 | 141                                                                              |
| <b>2.0 T4 MAir 280 CV AWD engine</b> automatic transmission                 | 148                                                                              |
| <b>2.2 JTD 136 HP RWD engine</b> manual transmission                        | 109                                                                              |
| <b>2.2 JTD 136 HP RWD engine</b> manual transmission(*)                     | 105                                                                              |
| <b>2.2 JTD 150 HP RWD engine</b> manual transmission                        | 109                                                                              |
| <b>2.2 JTD 150 HP RWD engine</b> manual transmission(*)                     | 105                                                                              |
| <b>2.2 JTD 180 HP RWD engine</b> manual transmission                        | 109                                                                              |
| <b>2.2 JTD 180 HP RWD engine</b> manual transmission(*)                     | 105                                                                              |
| <b>2.2 JTD 136 HP RWD engine</b> automatic transmission                     | 109                                                                              |
| <b>2.2 JTD 136 HP RWD engine</b> automatic transmission (*)                 | 105                                                                              |
| <b>2.2 JTD 150 HP RWD engine</b> automatic transmission                     | 109                                                                              |
| <b>2.2 JTD 150 HP RWD engine</b> automatic transmission (*)                 | 105                                                                              |
| <b>2.2 JTD 180 HP RWD engine</b> automatic transmission                     | 109                                                                              |
| <b>2.2 JTD 180 HP RWD engine</b> automatic transmission(*)                  | 105                                                                              |
| <b>2.2 JTD 180 HP RWD engine</b> automatic transmission LOW CO <sub>2</sub> | 99                                                                               |
| <b>2.2 JTD 180 HP AWD engine</b> automatic transmission                     | 122                                                                              |
| <b>2.2 JTD 210 HP AWD engine</b> automatic transmission                     | 122                                                                              |

(\*) Version for specific markets.



ABC

## **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR HANDLING THE VEHICLE AT THE END OF ITS LIFE**

---

(for markets where provided)

For years, Alfa Romeo S.p.A. has pursued a global commitment to protect and respect the environment by continually improving its production processes and developing increasingly "eco-compatible" products. To grant customers the best possible service in terms of respecting environmental laws and in response to European Directive 2000/53/EC governing vehicles at the end of their life, Alfa Romeo S.p.A. is offering its customers the chance to hand over their car at the end of its life without incurring any additional costs. The European Directive sets out that when the vehicle is handed over the last keeper or owner should not incur any expenses as a result of it having a zero or negative market value.

To hand your car over at the end of its life without extra cost, contact one of our dealerships if you are purchasing another car or an Alfa Romeo S.p.A.-authorised collection and scrapping centre. These centres have been carefully chosen to offer high quality service for the collection, treatment and recycling of vehicles at their end of life, respecting the surrounding environment.

You can find further information on these collection and scrapping centres either from an Alfa Romeo S.p.A. dealership or by calling the number in the Warranty Booklet or by consulting the Alfa Romeo S.p.A. website.





This chapter describes the main functions of the Connect 6.5" / Connect NAV 6.5" / Connect 3D NAV 8.8" system that can be fitted on the vehicle.

## MULTIMEDIA

|                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| ROAD SAFETY . . . . .                | 192 |
| RECEPTION CONDITIONS . . . . .       | 192 |
| CARE AND MAINTENANCE . . . . .       | 192 |
| ANTITHEFT PROTECTION . . . . .       | 193 |
| IMPORTANT NOTES . . . . .            | 193 |
| CONTROLS . . . . .                   | 194 |
| CONTROLS ON STEERING WHEEL . . . . . | 197 |
| INTRODUCTION . . . . .               | 199 |
| RADIO MODE . . . . .                 | 199 |
| MEDIA MODE . . . . .                 | 200 |
| Bluetooth® SOURCE . . . . .          | 200 |
| USB/iPod/AUX SUPPORT . . . . .       | 200 |
| PHONE MODE . . . . .                 | 201 |
| NAVIGATION MODE . . . . .            | 202 |
| SETTINGS . . . . .                   | 202 |
| APPLICATIONS . . . . .               | 205 |
| VOICE COMMANDS . . . . .             | 205 |

## ROAD SAFETY



168) 169)

Learn how to use the various system functions before setting off.

Read the instructions for the system carefully before setting off.

## RECEPTION CONDITIONS

(where provided)

Reception conditions change constantly while driving. Reception may be interfered with by the presence of mountains, buildings or bridges, especially when you are far away from the broadcaster.

**IMPORTANT** The volume may be adjusted when receiving traffic information and news.

## CARE AND MAINTENANCE



85) 86)

Observe the following precautions to ensure the system is fully operational:

- ☐ the display lens should not come into contact with pointed or rigid objects which could damage its surface; use a soft, dry anti-static cloth to clean and do not press.
- ☐ never use alcohol, petrols and derivatives to clean the display lens.
- ☐ prevent any liquid from entering the system: this could damage it beyond repair.

## ANTITHEFT PROTECTION

The system is equipped with an anti-theft protection system based on the exchange of information with the electronic control unit (Body Computer) on the vehicle.

This guarantees maximum security and prevents the system from being used on other cars in the event of theft. If necessary contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

## IMPORTANT NOTES

Look at the screen only and when it is necessary and safe. If you need to look at the screen for a long time, pull over to a safe place so as not to be distracted while driving.

Immediately stop using the system in the event of a fault. Otherwise the system might be damaged. Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible to have the system repaired.



### WARNING

**168)** Follow the safety rules here below: otherwise serious injuries may occur to the occupants or the system may be damaged.  
**169)** If the volume is too loud this can be dangerous. Adjust the volume so that you can still hear background noises (e.g. horns, ambulances, police vehicles, etc.).



### IMPORTANT

**85)** Only clean the front panel and the display with a soft, clean, dry, anti-static cloth. Cleaning and polishing products may damage the surface. Do not use alcohol or similar products to clean the panel or the display.  
**86)** Do not use the display as a base for supports with suction pads or adhesives for external navigators or smartphones or similar devices.



ABC

## CONTROLS

### CONTROLS ON TUNNEL



I76

1103650015EM

#### Tunnel control summary table ON/OFF control and Volume (1)

| Action           | Function                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| LONG PRESS       | switches the Connect system on and off.                                                                                                                                                                        |
| ROTATION         | clockwise to increase the volume, counter-clockwise to decrease the volume.                                                                                                                                    |
| SHORT PRESS      | Switches the system on if it is off.<br>In Radio mode: activates/deactivates the Mute function.<br>In Media mode: activates play/pause.                                                                        |
| MOVE TO THE SIDE | In Radio mode: to the right, selects the next radio station, to the left, selects the previous radio station.<br>In Media mode: to the right, selects the next track, to the left, selects the previous track. |

**OPTION button (2)**

Pressing the "Option" button while within the modes ("RADIO", "MEDIA", "PHONE", "NAVIGATION") will open the "Settings" screen of the concerned mode. Press it again to go back to the previously selected mode.

**Rotary Pad (3)**

| Action                      | Function                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ROTATION                    | Within the Menus: scrolls the menu items.<br>In Navigation mode (where provided): zoom function on the maps.                                                                                                  |
| PUMP                        | Within the Menus: confirms the selection.                                                                                                                                                                     |
| BRIEF MOVEMENT TO THE RIGHT | Within the Menus: accesses to the sub-menu of the selected function.<br>In Navigation mode (where provided), in the Explore map: to move to the right on the map.                                             |
| BRIEF MOVEMENT TO THE LEFT  | Within the Menus: returns to the previous menu; Esc function.<br>In Navigation mode (where provided), in the Explore map: to move to the left on the map.                                                     |
| BRIEF UPWARD MOVEMENT       | Within the Menus: enter the Multitasking menu and closes the preselection bar.<br>In Navigation mode (where provided), in the Explore map: to move upwards on the map.                                        |
| BRIEF DOWNWARD MOVEMENT     | Activates the radio preselection.<br>Within the Menus: enter the preselection bar and closes the Multitasking menu.<br>In Navigation mode (where provided), in the Explore map: to move downwards on the map. |



ABC

**MENU button (4)**

Opens the main menu.



I 77

11036S0060EM

# CONTROLS ON STEERING WHEEL

## DESCRIPTION

The controls for the main system functions are present on the steering wheel to make control easier.

The activation of the function selected is controlled, in some cases, by how long the button is pressed (short or long press) as described in the table below.



178

11046S0001EM

## CONTROLS ON STEERING WHEEL SUMMARY TABLE

### Button ►► (1)

| Action      | Function                                                                                     |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SHORT PRESS | In Radio mode: selects the next radio station.<br>In Media mode: selects the next track.     |
| LONG PRESS  | In Radio mode: scan higher frequencies until released.<br>In Media mode: fast forward track. |

### Button ◀◀ (2)

| Action      | Function                                                                                         |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SHORT PRESS | In Radio mode: selects the previous radio station.<br>In Media mode: selects the previous track. |



ABC

| Action     | Function                                                                                   |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| LONG PRESS | In Radio mode: scan lower frequencies until released.<br>In Media mode: fast rewind track. |

### Voice command button (3)

| Action      | Function                             |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| SHORT PRESS | Activate voice commands              |
| LONG PRESS  | Close the voice session immediately. |

### Phone button (4)

Answers / closes call or shows the recent calls list.

### Volume Control (5)

| Action      | Function                                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ROTATION    | Upwards: increases the volume.<br>Downwards: decreases the volume.                                                                                                    |
| SHORT PRESS | In Radio mode: activates/deactivates the Mute function.<br>In Media mode: activates play/pause.<br>In Phone mode: activates/deactivates the microphone Mute function. |



## INTRODUCTION

The system can be managed using the Rotary Pad. Turn it to navigate the menus, press it to activate/confirm the selections, push it leftwards to go back to the previous screen.

## RADIO MODE

After the desired radio station is selected, the following information is shown on the display fig. 179:



179

11056S0006EM

1 - control bar:

- ☐ Favourites List;
- ☐ Next;
- ☐ Previous;
- ☐ Stations List;
- ☐ Tuner seek;
- ☐ Frequency band.

2 - name of the radio being played and the favourite symbol if the station is store in the list;

3 - logo of the active frequency band;

4 - transmitted programme type;

5 - current station frequency;

6 - preset number (if the current station is stored).

## Audio

The following settings are available in the "Audio" menu present in the Options menu (Option button):

- ☐ Bass;
- ☐ Treble;
- ☐ Mid;
- ☐ Balance/Fade;
- ☐ Volume/Speed;
- ☐ Surround Sound (where provided);
- ☐ AUX volume comp.;
- ☐ Restore settings.



ABC

## MEDIA MODE

**IMPORTANT** Applications used on portable devices may be not compatible with the Connect system.

### Track selection (Browse)

With MEDIA fig. 180 mode active, briefly press the **⏮** / **⏭** buttons to play the previous/next track or keep the **⏮** / **⏭** buttons pressed to fast rewind/forward the track.



180

11066S0002EM

## Bluetooth® SOURCE

### Pairing a Bluetooth® audio device

Proceed as follows:

- ☐ activate the Bluetooth® function on the device;
- ☐ press the MENU button, select the "SETTINGS" function by turning and pressing the Rotary Pad;
- ☐ select "Infotainment";
- ☐ select the Bluetooth® support;
- ☐ select "Add device";
- ☐ search for the Connect system on the Bluetooth® audio device (during the pairing stage a screen is displayed showing the progress of the operation);
- ☐ select the device to be paired;
- ☐ when requested by the audio device, enter the PIN code shown on the system display or confirm on the device the PIN displayed;
- ☐ if the pairing procedure is completed successfully, a dedicated screen is displayed;
- ☐ the "Bluetooth®" can be reached also by pressing the OPTION button in the PHONE or MEDIA functions. The latter can be selected by turning and pressing the Rotary Pad in the main menu (MENU button).

**IMPORTANT** If the Bluetooth® connection between mobile phone and system is lost, consult the mobile phone handbook.

## USB/iPod/AUX SUPPORT

There might be up to three USB portals, one under the air conditioner control panel, one in the glove compartment in the central tunnel and one (recharge only) under the air vents behind the central tunnel. An AUX socket inside the glove compartment in the central tunnel.

## PHONE MODE

PHONE mode can be activated from the main menu (MENU button) by turning and pressing the Rotary Pad.



181

1110650002EM

The following screen appears on the display fig. 181:

- ☐ Dial;
  - ☐ Recent calls;
  - ☐ Favourites;
  - ☐ Contacts;
  - ☐ Text messages;
  - ☐ End call;
- with call in progress:
- ☐ Dial;
  - ☐ Recent calls;
  - ☐ Transfer to device;
  - ☐ Contacts;
  - ☐ Mute;
  - ☐ End call.

**IMPORTANT** The mobile phone audio is transmitted through the vehicle's audio system; the system automatically mutes the system audio when the PHONE function is used.

**IMPORTANT** For compatible cell phone list and support operations, contact Customer Service 00 800 2532 0000 (Quadrifoglio 00 800 253 242 00).

### Pairing a mobile phone

Proceed as follows:

- ☐ activate the Bluetooth® function on the device;
- ☐ press the MENU button, select the "SETTINGS" function by turning and pressing the Rotary Pad;
- ☐ select "Infotainment";
- ☐ select the Bluetooth® device;
- ☐ select "Add device";
- ☐ search for the Connect system on the Bluetooth® audio device (during the pairing stage a screen is displayed showing the progress of the operation);
- ☐ select the device to be paired;
- ☐ when requested by the audio device, enter the PIN code shown on the system display or confirm on the device the PIN displayed;
- ☐ when the pairing procedure is completed successfully, a dedicated screen is displayed;
- ☐ the "Bluetooth™" can be reached also by pressing the OPTION button in the

PHONE or MEDIA functions. The latter can be selected by turning and pressing the Rotary Pad in the main menu (MENU button).

### Making a phone call

Proceed as follows:

- ☐ selecting the "Recent calls" icon;
- ☐ selecting the "Contacts" icon;
- ☐ selecting the "Dial" icon.



ABC

## NAVIGATION MODE

(where provided)

**IMPORTANT** In the interest of safety and to reduce distractions while you are driving, you should always plan a route before you start driving.



182

1118650003EM

To plan a route, do the following:

- ☐ Activate the NAVIGATION mode by selecting it on the main menu fig. 182;
- ☐ Activate the "Set destination" function;

To insert the address, select the item to add (Country, City) on the circular keypad, choosing the keys to compose the desired name; proceeding with keying in the letters, the system automatically completes the word and on the right of the display offers a list of options that apply to the entered letters. You can now either complete the word or go to the list of suggestions by moving the Rotary Pad

rightwards or by pointing to "OK" and pressing the Rotary Pad.

Or

- ☐ Select an address on the "Recent destinations" list.

Or

- ☐ Select an address on the "Favourite destinations" list.
- ☐ Once the desired destination has been set, select "Start navigation" function.

The system suggests three alternatives according to the set criteria (fastest, no toll routes etc.); select the preferred alternative using the Rotary Pad.

With navigation started, using the control bar on the display, you can choose from the following options:

- ☐ Interrupt navigation: lets you interrupt navigation;
- ☐ Navigation volume: allows to set the message volume;
- ☐ Route management: lets you refine your route choice, offering a series of options;
- ☐ Route Preview: this is used to see a preview of the planned route;
- ☐ Zoom: lets you enlarge/reduce the map;
- ☐ Map explore: lets you move within the map.

## SETTINGS

To access the user-programmable functions, open the main menu by pressing the MENU button, then select SETTINGS by turning and pressing the Rotary Pad.

The following menu items can be found here fig. 183:

- ☐ Lights;
- ☐ Units & Language;
- ☐ Clock and Date;
- ☐ Safety;
- ☐ Driver assistance;
- ☐ Doors & Locks;
- ☐ Cluster;
- ☐ Infotainment;
- ☐ System.



183

1112650009EM

### Lights

To access the Lights function, select it by turning the Rotary Pad and press the Rotary Pad to activate. The following

settings can be modified when this mode is selected:

- ☐ Twilight Sensor;
- ☐ Follow me;
- ☐ Cornering lights;
- ☐ Flash Lights with Lock;
- ☐ Daytime running lights;
- ☐ Courtesy lights;
- ☐ Interior lights;
- ☐ Automatic High Beam;
- ☐ Restore settings.

### Units & Language

To access the "Units and Language" function, select it by turning the Rotary Pad and activate it by pressing on the knob itself. The following settings can be modified when this mode is selected:

- ☐ Units;
- ☐ Language;
- ☐ Restore settings.

### Clock and Date

To access the "Clock & Date" function, select it by turning the Rotary Pad and press the Rotary Pad to activate. The following settings can be modified when this mode is selected:

- ☐ Sync with GPS Time;
- ☐ Set time;
- ☐ Time format;
- ☐ Set Date;
- ☐ Restore settings.

### Safety

To access the "Safety" function, select it by turning the Rotary Pad and press the Rotary Pad to activate.

The following settings can be modified when this mode is selected:

#### *Speed Limiter*

This lets you activate/deactivate the function warning that you have exceeded the set speed.

#### *Speed Limiter Speed*

Lets you set the speed limit value. By turning the Rotary Pad, the speed increases by 5 mph (5 km/h), on rotation, from a minimum of 20 mph (30 km/h) to a maximum of 110 mph (180 km/h).

#### *Forward Collision Warning*

Allows you to select the intervention readiness for the anti-collision system.

Available options are:

- ☐ "Status": lets you activate/deactivate the system (where provided);
- ☐ "Mode": used to set the following operating modes: Warning-brake, Warning, Off (where provided);
- ☐ "Sensitivity": allows you to select the intervention readiness for the system according to the distance of the obstacle (near, average, far).

#### *Lane Departure Warning*

This function can be used to select the "readiness" of the Lane Departure

system to intervene. Available options are:

- ☐ "Sensitivity": allows you to select the intervention readiness for the system (high, low).

#### *Blind Spot Alert*

This function can be used to activate/deactivate the acoustic warning linked to the presence of objects in the blind spot of the door mirror.

#### *Passenger side airbag (where fitted)*

Lets you activate/deactivate the front passenger airbag function. When the function is accessed, the system will detect the activation/deactivation status of the airbags and confirm change of status. Press the Rotary Pad to continue.

The air bag status is visible through the LED next to the status icon on the dashboard.

Passenger protection activated: the ON LED switches on with a steady light.

Passenger protection deactivated: the OFF LED switches on with a steady light.

#### *Seat belt reminder*

This function appears only if the seat belt reminder was deactivated and allows to reactivate it.

### Driver assistance

To access the "Driver assistance" function, select it by turning the Rotary Pad and press the Rotary Pad to activate.



ABC

This function can be used to carry out the following adjustments:

#### *ParkSense*

This function can be used to select the type of warning provided by the ParkSense system.

Available options are:

☐ "Mode": the following options are available in this function: "Sound", the system notifies the driver of the presence of an obstacle by means of auditory signals only, by means of the speakers in the car or "Sound and Display", the system notifies the driver of the presence of an obstacle by means of auditory signals (by means of the speakers in the car) and visual signals, on the instrument panel display.

☐ "Audio": allows to select the volume of the acoustic warnings provided by the ParkSense system, the available options are: "High", "Medium" or "Low".

#### *Rear view camera* (where provided)

This function can be used to carry out the following adjustments:

☐ "View": lets you activate viewing the camera on the display;

☐ "Switching off delay": allows you to delay the switching off of the camera by a few seconds when reverse gear is disengaged.

☐ "Camera Guidelines": Allows you to activate the display of the dynamic guidelines that indicate the route of the vehicle.

#### *Automatic parking brake*

This function allows you to activate/deactivate the automatic parking brake engagement upon switching off the engine.

#### *Brake service* (where provided)

This function permits the activation of the procedure to carry out braking system servicing.

#### *Automatic mirror closing* (where provided)

This function activates/deactivates automatic folding of the mirrors when the doors are locked/unlocked.

#### *Restore settings*

This function allows you to delete the settings from this menu and restore the default settings.

Access the functions and select the setting by turning and pressing the Rotary Pad.

### **Doors & Locks**

To access the "Doors & Locks" function, select it by turning the Rotary Pad and press the control to activate it. The following settings can be modified when

this mode is selected:

- ☐ Door lock in motion;
- ☐ Unlock all doors on exit;
- ☐ Passive entry (where provided);
- ☐ Door Unlock On Entry (where provided);
- ☐ Horn w/Remote Start (for versions/markets where provided)
- ☐ Sound Horn with Lock (where provided);
- ☐ Auto Relock (where provided);
- ☐ Restore settings.

### **Control panel**

To access the "Cluster" function, select it by turning the Rotary Pad and press the Rotary Pad to activate. The following settings can be modified when this mode is selected:

- ☐ Warning buzzer volume;
- ☐ Trip B;
- ☐ Show telephone info;
- ☐ Show audio info;
- ☐ Show Navi info;
- ☐ Restore settings.

### **Infotainment**

To access the "Infotainment" function, select it by turning the Rotary Pad and press the Rotary Pad to activate. The following settings can be modified when this mode is selected:

- ☐ Screen Off;
- ☐ Splitscreen (where provided);
- ☐ Audio;

- ☐ Bluetooth®;
- ☐ Radio;
- ☐ Media;
- ☐ Phone;
- ☐ Navigation (if present);
- ☐ Apps.

### System

To access the "System" function, select it by turning the Rotary Pad and press the Rotary Pad to activate. The following settings can be modified when this mode is selected:

- ☐ Automatic activation;
- ☐ Switch-off delay;
- ☐ Update Software;
- ☐ Map update;
- ☐ Clear personal data;
- ☐ Restore settings.

## APPLICATIONS

APPLICATIONS mode can be activated from the main menu (MENU button) by turning and pressing the Rotary Pad.



184

1112650004EM

The display will show the following information:

- ☐ "My car": lets you see a series of information linked to the car status;
- ☐ "Efficient drive": this lets you see some driving style parameters;
- ☐ "Use and service": lets you consult the car's user manual.

## VOICE COMMANDS

IMPORTANT For languages not supported by the system, voice commands are not available.

To use the voice commands, press the  button on the steering wheel controls and say the function you want to activate aloud.

The following lists give the main word for each command.

### Radio functions

The  button lets you activate the following functions:

- ☐ Tune to Station <XXX>
- ☐ Tune by Frequency <XXX>
- ☐ Add to favourites
- ☐ Show Available Stations
- ☐ Show Favourite Stations
- ☐ FM
- ☐ AM
- ☐ DAB (where provided)
- ☐ SiriusXM (where provided)

### Media function

The  button lets you activate the following functions:

- ☐ Display Album
- ☐ Play Album
- ☐ Display Artist
- ☐ Play Artist
- ☐ Display Composer
- ☐ Play Composer



ABC

- ☐ Display Genre
- ☐ Play Genre
- ☐ Display Playlist
- ☐ Play Playlist
- ☐ Play song
- ☐ Play All
- ☐ Display all the albums
- ☐ Display all the artists
- ☐ Display all the composers
- ☐ Display all the genres
- ☐ Display all the playlists
- ☐ View all songs
- ☐ Activate shuffle
- ☐ Deactivate shuffle
- ☐ Change Source to Aux
- ☐ Change Source to USB 1
- ☐ Change Source to USB 2
- ☐ Change Source to Bluetooth

NOTE These controls are valid on devices connected to the system via USB ports and not through the **Bluetooth®** system.

### Telephone function

The  button lets you activate the following functions:

- ☐ Dial <XXX>
- ☐ Call <XXX>
- ☐ Redial
- ☐ Show contacts
- ☐ Show all calls
- ☐ Show missed calls
- ☐ Search

### Navigation functions

(where provided)

The  button lets you activate the following functions:

- ☐ Navigate to <address>
- ☐ Favourites
- ☐ Set 2D map
- ☐ Set detailed 3D map
- ☐ Set overhead view
- ☐ Route preview
- ☐ Start navigation
- ☐ Stop navigation
- ☐ Repeat instructions
- ☐ Show map
- ☐ Find the nearest <point of interest>



## IMPORTANT INFORMATION AND RECOMMENDATIONS



### WARNING

#### **INTERIOR FITTINGS**

*Do not travel with the storage compartment open: it may injure the front seat occupants in the event of an accident.*

*The cigar lighter gets extremely hot. Handle it carefully and make sure that children don't use it: risk of fire and/or burns.*

*Do not use the ashtray as a waste paper basket: it may catch fire in contact with cigarette stubs.*

#### **INTERIOR**

*Never use flammable products, such as petrol ether or rectified petrol to clean the inside of the car. The electrostatic charges which are generated by rubbing during the cleaning operation may cause a fire.*

*Do not keep aerosol cans in the car: they might explode. Aerosol cans must not be exposed to a temperature exceeding 50°C. When the vehicle is exposed to sunlight, the internal temperature can greatly exceed this value.*

*There must be no obstacles on the floor underneath the pedals; make sure that mats are always flat and do not interfere with the pedals.*

*Do not use aggressive organic substance such as: gasoline, kerosene, oil, acetone or solvents.*

#### **SUPPLY**

*Modifications or repairs to the supply system that are not carried out correctly or do not take the system technical specifications into account can cause malfunctions leading to the risk of fire.*

#### **ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION SYSTEMS**

*The catalytic converter and particulate filter (DPF) reach very high temperatures during operation. Therefore do not park the vehicle on flammable materials (e.g. grass, dry leaves, pine needles, etc.): fire hazard.*



### IMPORTANT

#### **EXTENDED CAR INACTIVITY**

*When you need to disconnect or remove the battery, do not close the boot. In order to avoid possible accidental closure, it is recommended to place an obstacle (e.g. a cloth) on the lock that would physically avoid closure.*

#### **INTERIOR**

*Never use alcohol, petrols and derivatives to clean the dashboard and instrument panel lens.*

**PETRONAS**  
***SELENIA***

***It's in the heart of your engine.***



Ask your mechanic for  
**PETRONAS**  
***SELENIA***

[www.puretyre.co.uk](http://www.puretyre.co.uk)

*Your car has chosen PETRONAS Selenia*

*The engine of your car was made with **PETRONAS Selenia**, the range of engine oils that satisfies the most advanced international specifications. Subject to specific tests and boasting outstanding technical characteristics, **PETRONAS Selenia** is a lubricant designed to equip your engine with **reliable, winning performance standards**"*

---

*The quality of PETRONAS Selenia is divided into a range of technologically advanced products:*

#### **SELENIA WR FORWARD 0W-30/0W-20**

Fully synthetic, latest generation lubricant specifically formulated for EURO 6 diesel engines. Its fully synthetic formula and 0W-30 viscosity grade guarantee excellent performance in terms of fuel economy for diesel engines equipped with high efficiency turbo-charger. PETRONAS Selenia Forward also features excellent resistance to oxidation, thus maintaining its technical characteristics and promoting maximum engine performance throughout the entire oil-change interval.

#### **SELENIA DIGITEK P.E. 0W-30**

Is the fully synthetic lubricant created for the most modern petrol engines. Its special viscosity grade and its specific formulation enhance the fuel economy features and, consequently the reduction of CO2 emissions. Especially created for TwinAir two-cylinder engines, it ensures maximum engine protection even under high mechanical stress due to mainly city use.

#### **SELENIA MULTIPower C3**

Is a high performance synthetic lubricant designed for petrol and diesel engines requiring products able to reduce ash deposits to the absolute minimum. It provides increased protection against wear and tear and has excellent fuel economy characteristics. It protects the particle filter (DPF) in diesel engines.

#### **SELENIA SPORT POWER**

Is a fully synthetic lubricant designed to enhance the sporting characteristics of direct injection petrol engines (GDI). It maximizes sporting performances while maintaining complete engine protection, even under the most severe conditions of use.

The PETRONAS Selenia range is completed with Selenia StAR Pure Energy, Selenia StAR, Selenia WR Pure Energy, Selenia Sport, and Selenia Racing.  
For further information concerning PETRONAS Selenia products, consult the website: [www.pli-petronas.com](http://www.pli-petronas.com)







## INDEX

|                                                       |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| "Alfa DNA" system . . . . .                           | 111 |
| <b>A</b> BS (system) . . . . .                        | 68  |
| Active Cruise Control . . . . .                       | 115 |
| Active safety systems . . . . .                       | 68  |
| AFS function . . . . .                                | 27  |
| Airbag . . . . .                                      |     |
| Front airbags . . . . .                               | 97  |
| Side airbags . . . . .                                | 101 |
| Airbag (SRS supplementary restraint system) . . . . . | 97  |
| Alarm system . . . . .                                | 15  |
| ATV (Alfa™ Active Torque Vectoring) system . . . . .  | 70  |
| Automatic dual-zone climate control system . . . . .  | 31  |
| Automatic transmission . . . . .                      | 108 |
| <b>B</b> attery . . . . .                             | 162 |
| Battery recharging . . . . .                          | 163 |
| Bodywork (cleaning and maintenance) . . . . .         | 168 |
| Bonnet . . . . .                                      | 35  |
| Brakes . . . . .                                      |     |
| brake fluid level . . . . .                           | 161 |
| Broken-down vehicle towing . . . . .                  | 147 |
| BSM (Blind Spot Monitoring) . . . . .                 | 71  |
| <b>C</b> arrying children safely . . . . .            | 85  |
| Checking levels . . . . .                             | 157 |
| Child protection systems . . . . .                    | 85  |
| Child safety device . . . . .                         | 18  |

|                                                                                                            |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Climate control system . . . . .                                                                           | 31  |
| CO2 emissions . . . . .                                                                                    | 189 |
| Control panel and on-board instruments . . . . .                                                           | 40  |
| <b>C</b> ONTROLS . . . . .                                                                                 | 194 |
| Controls on steering wheel summary table . . . . .                                                         | 197 |
| Controls on tunnel . . . . .                                                                               | 194 |
| Tunnel control summary table . . . . .                                                                     | 194 |
| <b>C</b> ONTROLS ON STEERING WHEEL . . . . .                                                               | 197 |
| Cruise Control . . . . .                                                                                   | 114 |
| <b>D</b> aytime running lights (DRL) . . . . .                                                             | 25  |
| Dimensions . . . . .                                                                                       | 176 |
| Dipped headlights . . . . .                                                                                | 25  |
| Dipped headlights (changing a bulb) . . . . .                                                              | 135 |
| Direction indicators (changing a bulb) . . . . .                                                           | 136 |
| Display . . . . .                                                                                          | 42  |
| Doors . . . . .                                                                                            | 16  |
| Driving assistance systems . . . . .                                                                       | 71  |
| Driving modes . . . . .                                                                                    | 111 |
| DTC (system) . . . . .                                                                                     | 68  |
| Dusk sensor . . . . .                                                                                      | 25  |
| <b>E</b> lectric parking brake . . . . .                                                                   | 105 |
| Electric steering wheel heating . . . . .                                                                  | 23  |
| Electric sunroof . . . . .                                                                                 | 34  |
| Electric windows . . . . .                                                                                 | 33  |
| Emergency starting . . . . .                                                                               | 144 |
| Engine . . . . .                                                                                           | 171 |
| engine coolant level . . . . .                                                                             | 161 |
| Engine compartment . . . . .                                                                               | 157 |
| Engine Immobilizer (system) . . . . .                                                                      | 14  |
| Engine oil . . . . .                                                                                       |     |
| consumption . . . . .                                                                                      | 160 |
| level check . . . . .                                                                                      | 160 |
| ESC (Electronic Stability Control) system . . . . .                                                        | 68  |
| External lights . . . . .                                                                                  | 25  |
| <b>F</b> luids and lubricants . . . . .                                                                    | 182 |
| Fog lights (bulb replacement) . . . . .                                                                    | 136 |
| Forward Collision Warning (system) . . . . .                                                               | 73  |
| Front ceiling light . . . . .                                                                              | 29  |
| Front fog lights . . . . .                                                                                 | 26  |
| Front light cluster with main beam/dipped beam halogen headlights (bulb replacement) . . . . .             | 135 |
| Front light cluster with main beam/dipped beam Xenon gas discharge headlights (bulb replacement) . . . . . | 137 |
| Front seat electric heating . . . . .                                                                      | 20  |
| Front seats (electric adjustment) . . . . .                                                                | 19  |
| Front seats (manual adjustments) . . . . .                                                                 | 19  |
| Fuel consumption . . . . .                                                                                 | 187 |
| Fuel cut-off system . . . . .                                                                              | 147 |
| Fuse boxes . . . . .                                                                                       | 138 |
| Fuses (replacement) . . . . .                                                                              | 137 |
| <b>H</b> azard warning lights . . . . .                                                                    | 132 |
| Emergency braking . . . . .                                                                                | 132 |



ABC

|                                                           |     |                                                                            |          |                                                                        |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Headlight alignment adjustment . . . . .                  | 28  | Park Sensors system . . . . .                                              | 122      | Scheduled servicing . . . . .                                          | 150 |
| Headlight alignment corrector . . . . .                   | 28  | Parking lights . . . . .                                                   | 26       | Scheduled servicing plan (2.2 JTD<br>diesel engine versions) . . . . . | 154 |
| Headrests . . . . .                                       | 22  | Parking the vehicle . . . . .                                              | 105      | Screen wiper/washer . . . . .                                          | 29  |
| HSA (Hill Start Assist) system . . . . .                  | 69  | Passive Entry (system) . . . . .                                           | 16       | Smart washing function . . . . .                                       | 30  |
| i-Size child restraint systems . . . . .                  | 91  | PBA (Panic Brake Assist) system . . . . .                                  | 69       | Seat belts . . . . .                                                   | 80  |
| <b>I</b> dentification data . . . . .                     | 170 | Performance (top speed) . . . . .                                          | 185      | Seats . . . . .                                                        | 19  |
| Ignition device . . . . .                                 | 13  | Power Lock (device) . . . . .                                              | 17       | Service schedule (2.0 T4 MAir<br>petrol engine versions) . . . . .     | 151 |
| Important information and<br>recommendations . . . . .    | 207 | Prescriptions for handling the<br>vehicle at the end of its life . . . . . | 190      | Servicing procedures . . . . .                                         | 164 |
| Interior lights . . . . .                                 | 29  | Pretensioners . . . . .                                                    | 83       | Side bag . . . . .                                                     | 101 |
| ISOFIX child restraint system<br>(installation) . . . . . | 89  | Load limiters . . . . .                                                    | 84       | Side lights . . . . .                                                  | 25  |
| <b>J</b> ump starting . . . . .                           | 145 | <b>R</b> ain sensor . . . . .                                              | 30       | Snow chains . . . . .                                                  | 166 |
| <b>K</b> eys . . . . .                                    |     | RCP system . . . . .                                                       | 72       | Speed Limiter . . . . .                                                | 113 |
| electronic key . . . . .                                  | 12  | Rear Back-up Camera / Dynamic<br>Gridlines . . . . .                       | 126      | Split folding rear seat . . . . .                                      | 21  |
| <b>L</b> ane Change . . . . .                             | 27  | Rear seats . . . . .                                                       | 21       | SRS (supplementary restraint<br>system) . . . . .                      | 97  |
| Lane Departure Warning System . . . . .                   | 124 | Rear view mirrors . . . . .                                                | 24       | Start & Stop Evo . . . . .                                             | 112 |
| Lifting the vehicle . . . . .                             | 166 | Reconfigurable TFT display . . . . .                                       | 42       | Starting the engine . . . . .                                          | 104 |
| Light bulbs . . . . .                                     |     | Refuelling . . . . .                                                       | 180      | Starting with flat key battery . . . . .                               | 14  |
| types of bulbs . . . . .                                  | 133 | Refuelling procedure . . . . .                                             | 127      | Steering lock . . . . .                                                | 14  |
| Light switch . . . . .                                    | 25  | Refuelling the vehicle . . . . .                                           | 127      | Steering wheel . . . . .                                               | 23  |
| <b>M</b> ain beam headlights . . . . .                    | 27  | Replacing a bulb . . . . .                                                 | 132      | Symbols . . . . .                                                      | 4   |
| Automatic main beam headlights . . . . .                  | 27  | Replacing an external bulb . . . . .                                       | 135      | <b>T</b> ailgate . . . . .                                             | 36  |
| Main beam headlights (changing a<br>bulb) . . . . .       | 135 | Rims and tyres . . . . .                                                   | 166, 173 | TC (Traction Control) system . . . . .                                 | 69  |
| Manual gearbox . . . . .                                  | 107 | Rims and tyres provided . . . . .                                          | 173      | TFT Display (3.5") . . . . .                                           | 40  |
| <b>O</b> ccupant protection systems . . . . .             | 80  | Roof rack/Ski rack . . . . .                                               | 37       | TFT Display (7") . . . . .                                             | 41  |
| <b>P</b> aintwork (cleaning and<br>maintenance) . . . . . | 168 | <b>S</b> BA (Seat Belt Alert) . . . . .                                    | 82       | The keys . . . . .                                                     | 12  |
|                                                           |     | SBA (Seat Belt Alert) System . . . . .                                     | 82       | Tire Repair Kit . . . . .                                              | 142 |
|                                                           |     | SBL function . . . . .                                                     | 27       |                                                                        |     |



|                                                 |     |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Towing the vehicle . . . . .                    | 148 |
| Towing trailers . . . . .                       | 130 |
| TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System). . . . . | 77  |
| Tyres (inflation pressure) . . . . .            | 174 |

|                                             |   |
|---------------------------------------------|---|
| <b>U</b> se of the Owner Handbook . . . . . | 3 |
|---------------------------------------------|---|

|                                                    |     |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----|
| <b>V</b> ehicle changes/alterations . . . . .      | 5   |
| Vehicle identification number . . . . .            | 170 |
| <b>W</b> arning lights and messages . . . . .      | 48  |
| Washer fluid for<br>windscreen/headlights. . . . . | 161 |
| Weights . . . . .                                  | 178 |
| Wheels . . . . .                                   | 173 |

|                            |     |
|----------------------------|-----|
| Wheels and tyres . . . . . | 166 |
| Window bag . . . . .       | 101 |
| Windscreen wiper . . . . . | 29  |
| replacing blades. . . . .  | 164 |



FCA Italy S.p.A. - MOPAR - Technical Services - Service Engineering  
Largo Senatore G. Agnelli, 3 - 10040 Volvera - Turin (Italy)  
Print no. 603.93.066-03/2017 - 2 Edition

[www.puretyre.co.uk](http://www.puretyre.co.uk)

# ALFA ROMEO GENUINE SPARE PARTS AND ACCESSORIES

## PERFECT FOR YOUR VEHICLE, RIGHT DOWN TO THE SMALLEST DETAIL

The **Alfa Romeo Genuine Spare Parts and Accessories** follow the rigid component engineering and manufacturing specifications used in the assembly line to meet the technical specifications of your new Alfa Romeo and to enhance its style and performance. They undergo strict approval tests and **quality** controls to ensure they comply with **safety** and **environmental standards**.

All of the components on your new Alfa Romeo, from the smallest bulb to the most complex mechanical, electrical and electronic systems, are designed to work in harmony and guarantee you a comfortable and safe drive, in full respect for the environment. The Genuine Accessories fully enhance the style of your new vehicle.

Entrust **the experience and quality of Alfa Romeo Dealerships** to find the full range of Alfa Romeo Genuine Spare Parts and Accessories.

---

Find your nearest Dealership on **[www.alfaromeo.com](http://www.alfaromeo.com)**

---



[www.puretyre.co.uk](http://www.puretyre.co.uk)



*La meccanica delle emozioni*